

**THE AUTOBIOGRAPHY OF RAM CHANDRA**

PART II - VOL. II

THE AUTOBIOGRAPHY OF SHRI RAM CHANDRA JI

(SHRI BABUJI)

PART II (3 VOLUMES)

(1944-1955)

First Volume:

PREPARATION

(May to September, 1944)

Second Volume

DECLARATION

(October, 1944 to March, 1945)

Third Volume:

CONTRIBUTION

(April 1945 to June, 1955)

Translated & Edited by:

S.P.SRIVASTAVA

with Introduction & Notes

## PUBLISHER'S NOTE

On behalf of Revered Shri Babuji's family, I have the proud privilege of publishing this 'Autobiography of Shri Ram Chandra Ji part two volume second: Declaration' within one year of the publication of its 'Volume first: Preparation'; and hope that the final 'Volume third; Contribution' will also be available in printed form soon.

We are thankful to practicants of Sahaj Marg System of spirituality and devotees of the Revered Master for their enthusiastic response to the publication of this series of books, which constitute a land mark in the history of spirituality as a systematic discipline. The chief characteristic of this second volume of this series is the amazing account of Revered Master's training by the whole tradition of spiritual research down the ages under the sole care of the Adi Guru Revered Lalaji Saheb and Reverend Swami Vivekananda Ji, leading to the declaration of Revered Shri Babuji as the real successor-representative of His own Revered Master. This really opens a new era as regards the solution of the controversies concerning representativeness in the history of spiritual science and discipline.

Our heartfelt gratitude to Professor Dr S.P. Srivastava and all those, who have helped him in the fulfillment of the task, assigned to him by Revered Master in life time, remains beyond expressions.

Thanks and appreciation to Dr S.B. Shyam Rao of Gulbarga are to be placed on record for his most sincere efforts in efficiently bringing out this volume.

Krishna Janmashtami  
September 3, 1988.

Prakash Chandra Saxena  
Advocate  
Rai Bahadur Buildings,  
Shri Ram Chandra Mission,  
Shahjahanpur (U.P.),

INDIA

## EDITOR'S NOTE

Readers of these volumes/treatises will note that while the first volume contained intercommunications of Shri Babuji with His Master Lalaji Saheb, the second volume abounds in a spate of intercommunications with so many Reverend elders of the Yore, renowned to be top most originators and trend-setters in the hoary history of the science of spirituality and beyond and yet beyond from time to time. What remains remarkable is that the author emphasizes in undertones not the importance of being in communication with high personalities of Yore so much, as the aspect of training being received continuously in preparation for the task ahead. Moreover the author's single pointed attachment to one and one alone even for receiving training or gift, however superb and from whichever high source, is to be noted as the ideal for the sake of one's own guidance in the realm of Yogic Sadhana (practice)., Such an attachment to one and one alone generally breeds arrogance and discourtesy to the extent of strengthening of egoistical impediments on one's way to the goal. The Shri Babuji the training in normal courtesies and ordinary culture, befitting an humble aspirant from the human fold, is of prime value; and even in this regard dependence on just the one and one alone remains the only method to be adopted and relied upon. In a way everything is coming from within oneself, but recognized as a gift from superior sources. Herein lies the greatness of special personality. Revered Shri Babuji never had the least speck of doubt about his intuitions; and yet he always spoke of being tested by the competent persons whether all that was coming to his experience could possibility be a construction of His own prolific fanciful self-seeking. It is this combination of most humble open-mindedness and adamant firmness of will that constitutes the acme of human grandeur devoid of anything grandiose about it. It is this element that is needed for real contribution by the greatest innovators in any field, most of all in the realm of Spirituality and Brahavidya

the superb science/discipline of infinite human unfoldment. That element tender as a flower's fragrance and yet hard as granite unraffled by thunderbolt lies abundantly exhibited in the structure of this second volume of Autobiography of Shri Ram Chandraji part II, that now follows hereafter.

### **ACKNOWLEDGEMENT**

As in case of 'Vol.I; Preparation' of 'The Autobiography of Shri Ram Chandraji: Part II,' I remain grateful to many persons from whom I have derived help in bringing out this 'Vol.II: Declaration'. To mention all of them here will be impossible. Apart from Sister's Hedianne Bosch and Meta Van den Broek of Amsterdam who have provided invaluable assistance of all kind, I am obliged most of all to Dr. Prem Sagar of Rohtak and his wife Smt. Rajani Sharma, for both personal and academic assistance and support of every sort. They have come to be so much our own that any formal mention seems needless and embarrassing. Thanks are due to dear Gert to Graaf of Amsterdam for his, affectionate assistance in preparing the plan-maps of certain places in Mathura, as given in the manuscript of the original text of this treatise (in Urdu). May Revered Master's ever lasting grace be available always to them, and all others, who could not be mentioned here.

S.P. Srivastava

Krishna Janmashtami

3-9-1988.

### **DECLARATION**

. There is no need of provoking him much. About C1, the duty which I have assigned to M1, he should continue to perform without interruption. He need not be perturbed much about L1. I have thought out an arrangement concerning M1, he should continue to perform without interruption. He need not be perturbed much about L1. I have thought out an arrangement concerning M1. Let me be free from the annual function (Bhandara). I shall prepare field for him (M1) also. I tell for his satisfaction that what I have thought out cannot be put off. For the time being, only the topmost opponent has been crushed down.

8-10-1944

Revered Master's revelation: "S5 has stepped today in the cosmic region (Kubra or Brahmanda)"

9-10-1944

Revered Master's dictation: "R2 has stepped today in the cosmic region Dear Ram Chandra's method of training, just now, is quite new, which I have liked much. This method can be applied in general, but not in the case of somebody, who may not be considered reliable. This invention, written down in the confidential notebook, is not an ordinary invention, nor can it occur to an ordinary intelligence. Whoever may have claims should just have a look at dear Ram Chandra's inventions (to know his capability). I do not mean that the inventions are to be demonstrated: it was just an

expression of my happiness. I have started already somewhere that such novel inventions will occur in this system.”

Dictation from prophet Hazrat Mohammed: “I got thousands of idols broken to bring people to the straight path. I have given some hints in the Holy Quran, with which people may compare you, and ascertain (your merit). I have filled you fully with my connection (Nisbat). This is the effect of love for the Master. Your Master shall continue dictation beyond this. “Dictation from the prophet through Revered Master continued: “You have to work according to Nature’s will and plan. You begin work according to the new technique revealed to you. I (Revered Master) am also yoked to this duty. The reflection of every thought or (holy) writing remains established in the vacuum. When I (Prophet Mohammed or Revered Master) have to reveal some of these (thoughts or writings) to somebody, I penetrate those same particles in the heart of that person; and those particles create thoughts in accordance with those particles in the heart of that person, which thoughts get translated accordingly into that person’s mother language, or the branch of knowledge, to which he (or she) be acquainted.”

Dictation from Revered Master: “One matter for consideration is that you be made absolutely free after your physical veiling, and saved from these intricacies. One precaution is needed, viz. that you never give transmission from this stage to anybody. This is Prophethood.”

Dictation from Prophet Mohammed: “I shall also be directly inter communing with you, like your guide.”

The Ghous (Parshad) of the particular region noticed the effect of working and made an enquiry about it.

Reply: “This is a secret of Nature. It need not be told.”

Revered Master's dictation: "No one is a greater enemy of mine than N1. Clear expression of the effect of your working has started (New time 1.50 P.M.). Transmission be regularly given to R2. He should take due precautions, concerning diet. He should not transmit to anybody during this (special) period. He is to be made to traverse those points by way of reflection, which are necessary for the status of Qutub (Dhruva or fixed pole star). He (R2) will work in subordination to M1; and also follow whatever further orders (and instructions) be issued by me. He should take a vow that he will not allow bigotry to come close to him, and will do as ordered to – (without any thought or will contrary to it). You may assign the work of destruction to him also according to the need. Before creating the condition, an oath to that effect will have to be administered to him; and there will also be a condition in this regard, that if he does any thing ever against the orders, the power granted to him shall be drawn back to where it came from. Get him (R2) advanced beyond the cosmic region within a week. Beyond that, I will tell you later. During this period, he (R2) should practice observation of his condition most minutely so that he derives help (from such observation) in imparting training to others. He is the first person from the particular (priestly) class, whom I have ordered to be established in the status of Qutub today. Nobody from that class ever reached the status of Qutub. There is no doubt just one example (more). The reasons are quite clear, One thing I am telling for giving rest to the mind of R2. When he goes to sleep, he should establish a circle around his mother and have the firm supposition that it is connected to her body inside and outside. There should be no care for life or death. Death cannot occur before time. I had established R2 in his present stage (cosmic region). His uncle pulled him down. Now I have created capability in him (R2).

Two long dictations with detailed descriptions and instructions from Prophet Mohammed followed.

Instructions from Revered Master: "These dictations and instructions from the Revered Prophet must have to be kept strictly confidential. Gabriel is the name of faultless intelligence. Your revelation at your office occurred at 1.15 P.M. according to the new



timing (as effected in India during the second world war).”

At 7.00 P.M. R2 was to the para cosmic region (Ulia or Para Brahmanda); and at 8.20 P.M. he was made to cross it and arrive at the point of humility (Ibd); and light was cast from the point beyond that also.

10-10-1944

Directions from Revered Prophet Mohammed for confidential work of destruction were received.

Revered Master’s dictation: “The light for this kind of work concerning the change of system was given first of all to y Revered Master.”

At 10.55 A.M. on Tuesday (today) permission (for training others) from the point of humility was granted to R2 on orders from Revered Master. It was verified by M1.

Detailed instructions and description for confidential work of destruction work of destruction assigned by Prophet Mohammed were received, and were acted upon.

Dictation from Revered Master: “Before the start of creation certain conditions were present in the form of mere supposition, in the Ultimate Being (Zaat). At the beginning of Kshobh (original upsurge or imbalance or stirring desire) those conditions (in the form of mere supposition in the state of perfect motionless balance of Ultimate Being), received a mild jerk (plan came to view). On the side having greater push of the jerk, those (conditions) assumed the form of a thick current, or, you can say, the particles (quanta) therein, which are needed for running the processes of the universe, were thick and throng. In other words, it can also be said that those powers, that I have just described, were there to stimulate various characters (bases of right conduct). Just these forces came to be designated as powers of discrimination (Vivek Shakti). In some of these (powers) there was a greater part of intelligence; in some others there was more

material for boxing and wrestling; in still other ones there was the dark state of ignorance. When these currents came down, they started attracting such light particles (atoms) that a state little denser than sublimity came to occur. When sages studied this philosophy, they gave these (original currents) different names. All these have connection to the human body. Just now the references to (the stories of) Ganesh and Swamy Kartik (mythological sons of Lord Shiva and Parvati) are all imaginary constructions only. Just a story has been structured to establish the prestige of Ganesh. It is (in fact) that force which is connected to the anal plexus (Muladhara) (in the human body); and this main current reaches up to the brain. In Hatha Yoga, just this is the first (rung of the) ladder, and the last one in Raja Yoga. Though this point is very dirty, so to say, yet on its getting awakened (plan came to view), all these (other points or plexuses) are opened and powers are created. Times kept

on changing; darkness continued to prevail; solidity kept on increasing; and Reality got progressively more and more forgotten. There was search for the waves, without having any concern with the water. Intelligence continued being covered with more and more veils. In consequence, novel stories were structured for establishing one's own prestige and capability, so that those who read these stories may have the proof of their creators' flight of imagination. The result was that only stories remained; and the same started being worshipped in changed garbs. Reality lost its identity in the waves.

12-10-1944

Dictation from Revered Prophet Mohammed; "My order for destruction was (well-considered and) correct. There is no need for any delay (in completing the work). Keep your own system intact for the time being until the new system comes up in its place. I have assigned the duty concerning this to your Master. Call your Master now."

Revered Master's instruction: "The destruction is essential. Finish this work just today. Keep only one system intact for the time being."

After completion of the work, dictation from Lord Krishna descended: "The systems which you have destroyed today, shall all get merged in me. Only one system, which is connected to me, shall remain. I have become connected to you directly today. I felt delighted at your firm faith (in your Master). All your mistakes have been pardoned."

Revered Master's dictation: "I cannot desist from telling that although you committed impertinence and rashness, yet love for me was included therein. This is the first example of a disciple who stands unprepared to accept the greatest reward (sublimity or delicacy) in the face of one's own Master. People will pine for this state; and this will remain just your share. I got you to observe the rules (of regard), which was necessarily binding as duty. You take my form to be the form of Lord Krishna. Can it be possible for dear M1 to find such an example as may bid goodbye to the greatest divine gift (delicacy or sublimity) as sacrifice to his own Master? Your name shall live for ever. I am telling you a very great secret, viz. in a way you possess Lord Krishna's mergence in you. This came to your knowledge only today. This thing had got transferred by itself. I am very happy."

Dictation from Lord Krishna: "There are large-scale additions with regard to the events, which were recorded by people in my biography. My life was very simple. I was fond of games and sports. In the Gita people have brought about a lot of adulteration, and twisted my words. Master is needed to be just like yours. I just praise (your) faith (in your Master)."

Dictation from Revered Master: "I had given you permission (for training) in the various systems. That (permission) I am now withdrawing, as those systems have suffered destruction. Permission in only one system now remains. Regarding permission granted to M1 on behalf of various families, I am withdrawing these also, with a single exception (as in your case). Only one system shall remain. The permission granted to B1 by A1 on

behalf of many families, also stands withdrawn.”

Dictation from Lord Krishna: “It was just my own will, which has been fulfilled through the destruction wrought by Prophet Mohammed. Now the system will be the path of the sags (Santa Mata). People had fallen to diversity. It had resulted in a lack of relationship among people belonging to systems almost similar to one another. Now there will be a new method for initiations.”

Dictation from Revered Master: “If someone initiates against these instructions, it shall be ‘contra-initiations’. You issue orders (to that effect). Elders of yore have praised your faith (in your Master) quite a lot, even though (your) style was impertinent. If I had not made you beware, there would have occurred a conflict concerning leadership of spiritual guidance; and the purpose would have remained only half realized. Your permission from Kabir-Panth (sect) is intact. I had got permission from Kabir-Panth, Dadu-Panth and other sects: all those permissions shall remain intact. All initiations shall be effected on my hand; and their connection shall be (invariably) with Lord Krishna. At the time of initiation a promise will be made to the effect that all that Lord Krishna has enjoined as matters of principle, shall be observed (by the initiated person). This I am laying down for the future. Make an enquiry from me, when the opportunity may arise. About the genealogical tree, your tongue uttered the right thing. It is exactly like that, even though a little before time.”

Lord Krishna’s dictation: “You should not feel sorry for the turn of events today. I desired to put you directly into the chain of my system, so that my chain starts anew with you. You included your Master in it. I liked it much. Only (your) style was objectionable. That, I have pardoned.”

[Note: My experience was the apart from my Revered Master, a current was connecting me to Lord Krishna, and my Master was not included in it. As such, I submitted that I wanted it through my own Guide. Due to delay in reply, I was just going to cut off that connection, when an instruction from my Revered Master descended. “Do not do that: I

am also included.”]

Revered Master’s explanation: “There was delay because, on your submission, He (Lord Krishna) wanted to orient that current through me.”

13-10-1944

Revered Master’s dictation: “Incarnations descend from the levels of Destructional Time (Kala) and Super-Destructional Time (Maha-Kala). When more strictness is required, then the emergence is from Maha-Kala; and when lesser strictness is needed, then incarnation is from the point of Kala. They possess summary-powers. Both powers are within their command. Their form can be devotional as well as destructional. They possess a sword in one hand and a book in the other. Those coming from the level of righteousness (Satpad) do not possess such rights. Their natural power does not help during war (and conflict). Revered Prophet Mohammed was the store-house of kindness. The incarnations famed to be in sub-human (animal) forms are mental constructions and gossip- Rama and Krishna are the only two incarnations.

“Matsya (fish) incarnation: When the times turned against the Hindus, their seers also suffered gradual deterioration from the state, which happened to befit them (earlier). As deterioration set in, there arose thoughts concerning honour and respect. By and by, things came to such a pass that everyone of them started writing his own book, cooking up some story that may bring an honourable and respectful remembrance of the author to his successors and posterity. I am telling you about the gentleman who laid down the foundations of the Fish-incarnation. He performed lots of austerities, thereby developing his inner prowess (plan came to view). His reach was not upto the thought, where the idea of development gets evaporated. Whatever was there, he considered in sufficient. He was very fond of bathing, and was in the habit of catching fish. He used to catch fish

and throw them in the river. This had come to enter the very structure of his blood and marrow. One day it occurred to him that something strange (and peculiar) may be cooked up to remove the defective character (of his habit) in the general view, so that the people forming a bad opinion about him may come to replace it with a good idea, and the coming generations may forsake the defect and look upon him with respect. Thinking over the problem brought about the jumping of the same fish in the river of his thought (and imagination). In consequence, he put a small fish in his bowl (Kamandalu). Then he

caught a bigger fish, which could not get accommodated in the bowl. (As usual) he returned (to his hermitage) after throwing all those fish in the river, and started writing the book. How fine is the evidence of it all that the same hermit (sage) writes that the fish not accommodated in the bowl was thrown in the river, and when it outgrew even the size of the river, it was thrown in the ocean; and when it was incapable of being accommodated even in the ocean, it started talking to that hermit. The flow of the river is always in a zigzag way. As such, the fish on growing up would have taken, only God knows, how many turns (in its body); and who would be the person of such strength that he could have thrown that fish in the ocean? People did not use their intelligence; otherwise this story in itself is an evidence of its being cooked up.

“My position was different; and your status is something else. I never used to cross (and contradict) any book, written in times of yore. You must say what is right and reasonable. I am telling you something very secret; those, who have a casual body, are not incarnations. “Do you know why (the hermit) Durvasa is designated as the incarnation of Rudra (temperamental God of Destruction – Shiva)? He made gradual progress (through austerities) to connect himself to that sphere (Mandala), wherefrom destructive powers come down. He did a lot of swimming there, and absorbed a large part of that power into himself. As such, wherever he went, the same power, which had got stuffed into him, found expression through him. This power being destructive, caused pain to others, brought sorrow and grief to them, and made their tears flow. Since

this power, having been absorbed to an almost perfect extent, had come to belong to him, and had descended into him, he happens to be designed as the incarnation of Shiva. He never attained liberation. Since it was a (destructive) Godly power, petty sages and other people gave him respect out of fear. There was no answer to this (destructive) power.

Dictation from Lord Krishna: “I respected sages to establish their honour and dignity. My story concerning Draupadi and him (sage Durvasa) is correct, and was performed by me to give a lesson to people. He did not suffer a fall from his status as a sage, as I had no intention against him. Your Master’s reach was poles higher than his (Durvasa’s).”

[The reference is to an incident, when sage Durvasa together with his large number of companions went to Draupadi and the Pandava brothers, during their exile in the forest, and demanded meals with the threat of course, if denied. Draupadi had no provision for the purpose. She sent the mendicants to take bath etc. and remembered Lord Krishna in a most helpless way. Lord Krishna arrived and demanded a meal for Himself. Draupadi narrated her condition and predicament. Lord Krishna, however, insisted to eat something; and started scrutinizing the utensils, used for cooking, and still lying uncleaned. He could discover a few grains of rice, which He ate wistfully. This made

Durvasa and his companions, who were washing themselves, fully satiated. Lord Krishna then sent Bhim to bring the mendicants to have their meals. As their hunger was all gone, they were not ready to come, while Bhim was insisting that they must eat or else the cooked food would go waste. Finally, Durvasa and his hoards ran away without eating.]

A prescription for mental illness is dictated

14-10-1944

Revered Master's dictation: "Dear Ram Chandra has brought about one more very effective invention. The Western people (scientists) mostly oriented 'matter' towards destruction; and some shortcoming remained even in what they did for the general good. He (Ram Chandra) has brought about such invention as may enable material power to cast effect on spirituality. I permit him to think more in this regard.

"This invention is concerned with using various colours created by making electric light pass through a glass-prism, on the particular practican in accordance with the colours of different spiritual regions. I am making an amendment in it, viz. the intensity of the effect on the practican of the coloured light passed through the glass-prism will be proportional to the intensity of electricity. The dark grayish colour will be suitable for the cosmic region; and yellowish white for the para cosmic region. For the organic region the right colour will be reddish pink. If somebody may possess a bad character., there will be a good effect of (appropriate) coloured light together with similar transmission. Just this training was obtained by Revered Prophet Mohammed from Lord Krishna, viz. moral behavior (Sulook) tinged with very light absorbance beyond selfhood (Majzoobiat). It was just this amendment introduced by Lord Krishna. In case of the incarnation of Lord Rama, there was emphasis on moral behavior (Sulook) alone. This is a very (important) matter. You have to introduce complete destruction."

Dictation from Lord Krishna: "At the time of my birth, I had completed the great battle (Mahabharat) conceptually; and it actually came to its (concrete) conclusion in the last part of my life. My incarnation was to wash off these poisonous effects which had pervaded the atmosphere. Much admixture has taken place in the books. All that needs to be removed. People cooked up peculiar insinuations with regard to my relationship with cowherd girls (Gopis), even ignoring consideration of my age at the time. The enemies of intelligence relieved all the gossip cooked up by the selfish class of priests to reveal in



their own depravity. Arrangements in this respect have also been made, which shall come to completion through this very system. Your Guide has already spoken a lot in this connection, which is all correct.” Some more remarks about the social structure followed.

Revered Master’s dictation: “There is no need for broadcasting all these revelations being brought to you; or else people will develop animosity to your life. If, per chance, these secrets fall to somebody’s ears, who may prove to be an enemy, then you have to do a way with it through a particular (spiritual) practice. It is just possible that you need to live in the world (physically) for quite a long time. It will depend on the need: Whatever is proper will be done. I like to confer some special powers on R2, so that he may work in that (particular) sphere.

“Not even one generation of this fellow C1 can earn liberation. Never call him to your place. I can pardon S1. I grant you the right to be as relentless to that person as you may like; and M1 should also not be sparing in this regard. There is no need to consult me (any further) in this matter.

“N1 had no idea even in a dream as to what personality dear Ram Chandra was going to be. What power could have stopped it from coming into being! I have prohibited him (Ram Chandra) to use that power. He can use it only to serve the purpose which he (Ram Chandra) has come to fulfil. If he now invites the (Sudarshan) boomerang (powerful destructive weapon of Lord Vishnu, the God of preservation), it will start its action immediately. Since I was aware of these conditions, I had restrained him much earlier concerning these matters. He should never invite the Destructive Time appearance (Kalarupa) of Lord Krishna. N1 had referred to this sometime in his gossip-mongering. His impression that a special personality had come into being was correct, though he had no knowledge about his whereabouts. What elder sages have written about him (special personality) is rather metaphorical. One thing more has been mentioned as a secret about him, viz., his origin from a virgin (mother). That was an expression of their conceptions.

Dictation from Lord Krishna: “Te complexion of Mahabharat deserves corrections. I had brought the condition of the cosmic region at its zenith to Arjun’s visions; and I had shown him the point where events occur (in subtle form) before taking place (in a concrete way). I had also brought to his comprehension the way of perfect self-surrender, for which I had incarnated. The references to Patanjali etc. in it are wrong. Only this much was the teaching (plan came to view.)”

Revered Master’s remark: “The darkness you have seen in this plan, preceded by innumerable armies, is the same plan that was brought to Arjun’s Vision.

Dictation from Lord Krishna continued: “Just this much was the sermon, I had delivered to Arjun.

“This plan of Mahabharat, I have just shown to you. About the Gandeeva bow (of Arjun), your guide has already told you. More than that (its being hypnotized) it was also connected to the wheel of Destructive Time (Kala Chakra). Duryodhan was very licentious. He was blinded to the extent of losing discrimination between good and bad. The effects of that had pervaded everybody. Karma etc. were all under his influence. When I went (to Duryodhan) as a messenger to avoid conflict and war, his egotism went to the extent of preparing to put me under arrest. As such, since I did not like to take up arms myself, I put the five Pandava brothers in the forefront. That was my power (in the form of Draupadi) which was incarnated only to bring about the Mahabharat (great war). People have resorted to exaggerations to the extent of accusing such a great woman as Draupadi., who was absolutely devoted to her husband alone (Pativrata), of polyandry, having five husbands at once and the same time. She was married to just one person, to whom alone she was wife. Everybody (no doubt) dreaded her. Dharmaraja (Yudhishtira) possessed the knowledge that she was an incarnation of (divine) power. Just as people have cooked up so many things about me, even so all that has been said by way of casting aspersions (of primitiveness) on Draupadi’s character and personality,

are all false.

“As regards the references concerning (the custom of) Niyoga (temporary cohabitation by a virgin or a widow with some man for the sake of bearing children) about Kunti (mother of Karna and the five Pandava brothers), the truth of the matter is that she had attracted through her spiritual power, different godly forces (powers of Nature) in an awakened state into her womb. At that time the spiritual will-power was in such an advanced state; as to turn every (and any) power of Nature into something alive (and awake). The story about the birth of Karna (and others) is correct. However, the ladies who resorted to (the technique of) Niyoga for begetting children, did not submit to the ordinary (or general) way. Having a second husband under any circumstances was not valid for a woman (at that time under the prevalent social order) as it resulted in admixture of progeny (Varna Sankar). Women did not become widows at that time: they insisted on remaining together, somehow or other, with their husband who got killed on the battlefield. Celibacy was observed by both (husband and wife). As such, there was no intense carnal desire. Moreover, there were schools everywhere, which provided character-training to children from the very beginning; and they were given education to develop pious thoughts from the outset. Every sage considered it his duty to be oriented to the training and education of children. There was provision for deterrent punishment by the king for persons breaking laws. The king’s coffers were for the public, and were used for public good. The land was fertile. Crops were good. People were prosperous. They had few needs. Most of their time was spent in remembrance of God. I like to see that race prosperous, in which I was born. That race suffered a terrible fall, for which the priests are responsible. They are destined to hell. I leave those amongst them aside, who even though being priests, did never consider themselves as such. I hurl condemnation only at those fools who are no better than animals and yet are always ready to have their feet worshipped. Just as such ones are in large number in jails, even so they are to be found in hell.

“Niyoga does not mean begetting children through cohabitation. I had only eight queens.

Rukmini was the most superior of them all. Radha was not my wife. She was (much) elder to me. At the time (of being with her) I was only a child. She no doubt loved me in the spirit of conjugality, but her thoughts were always pious. All the addition in the Mahabharat are the outcome of the (selfish) intellectual exercise of a particular class of people, whose destruction is also essential. Another power will bring about their annihilation.”

Dictation from Revered Master: “Whatever Lord Krishna has revealed is correct, word for word. The five husbands of Draupadi are in invention of the left-way (Vama Margin) priests.

“Intuitive comprehension of the Vedas had descended (on seers) exactly as it is coming upon you just now. Only the shape (of it) was somewhat different in accordance with (the difference of) the times. If your connection had been turned after that (old) way, you would not have been able to comprehend (anything). Due to the practice of celibacy (Brahmacharya) generation after generation, people possessed such a plan quite naturally, as (it) used to be identical (to and) in harmony with the voice of the Nature. It just needed to be touched off. Simply on account of this, intuitive comprehension (Shruti) has adopted a different shape now: What is coming to you is also the voice of the (unknowable) Transcendent.”

In response to a question from R2, Revered Master explained: “Every action of a human being leaves an impression on the mind, which remains in touch with the casual body. When one departs from one place and is reborn at another place, that material (of accumulated impressions) persists and is carried over by oneself (from the past life to the new one). If, in the present life, one has not performed good actions, the impressions brought from the previous life will start their fruition (Bhoga) i.e. being enjoyed (or suffered) when a favourable climate (for their fruition) is available. The actions performed in the present life, whatever, will mostly bring immediate punishment or reward in their trail; and a few shall be carried over for fruition ahead. This chain shall

continuously go on upto the final dissolution (of creation). Impressions will be coming one after the other for fruition (enjoyment or suffering); and this chain will continue without being broken, unless it comes to an end. Now the question arises as to how this fruition (of impressions) may be brought to an end! The device for this purpose, which is most superior, is to surrender oneself to somebody and have no concern with the fruition of impressions. There is no book of accounts (balance sheet of actions and their fruition etc.) in Nature: a human being structures his own fate; and creates by himself the shape of the fruition of the impressions.”

To another question, Revered Master continued to reply: “I have already replied to this query, i.e. the condition of the fruition of impressions takes shape when the climate is favourable to it. There is no question of compound interest. There is no third or fourth place realization in it. Everything germinates and grows through warmth. Just this is to be comprehended, that the ripe condition for the fruition of the impressions brought (from earlier life) shall develop quickly to the extent that these remain in touch with the warmth of love for the Real; and that an aspirant’s (immediate) potency for fruition (of impressions) restrains their being carried over (for fruition in the future. In our fold, formation of the impressions of present actions get stopped if the real form of love (and attachment) is developed. Only fruition (suffering) of (impressions of) past actions remains. This is a philosophy and it can be detailed out, which, however, shall need pages after pages being scribbled on; and the mind of the person, through whose mediumship (the knowledge of) all these things is descending, will not be able to work continuously in revealing these (mysteries) for that long period of time. Moreover, there is also not much need for grasping all this. I have brought a lot (of knowledge) for comprehension, in a few words. If you (R2) like to see it practically, it can be possible. That will take less time as well. However, one thing is certain, viz. if an impression is brought down, the shape of its fruition shall start immediately. That is not to be quite congenial. Dear Ram Chandra has referred in his diary to a mass of impressions descending on his heart. He has been suffering that for thirteen years now.”

15-10-1944

Revered Master's instructions: "Snap off all connections above me. There can be no order other than this; nor any other device (other than this) comes to comprehension (for the fulfillment of the purpose). I am helpless in view of God's command. Those who are initiated on my Revered Master's hand, will have to be initiated on my hand. In other words, the initiation of all those, who have not been initiated on my hand, shall get snapped off. I am utterly helpless in this matter. Those, whom I have initiated myself on my Revered Master's hand, shall retain their connection with me without the need of a fresh initiation. I shall draw that power or effect (o initiation) to myself. The difficulty arises in case of those who have been initiated by my Revered Master on the hand of His Revered Master (and so on and on). Enlighten K1 of J.. that this system has now got reoriented; and all systems, which were earlier connected to it, have come to an end. This work can be certainly done by way of indication; but you do it actually after the annual function. When you give permission (for training) to your respected aunt (wife of Revered Lalaji Saheb), then you establish her connection with me, before granting permission. Whatever difficulties may arise in that respect, you consult me about all of them.

Dictation from Lord Krishna at 5.00 P.M.: "What is ascribed to Bhishma Pitamah in Shanti Parva of Mahabharat with reference to meat-eating is a later addition (to the original text). Meat is certainly good for health. Bhim (elder brother of Arjun) was a meat-eater. Those who are pilgrims on the path of God-realization should not be oriented to meat-eating; for them it is harmful. Your spiritual guide was in accord with this principle. You have been permitted with a view to your health-conditions."

"Nobody loved me more than Radha. At the second place was (the love) of the Gopis. The description concerns Ras (night-long dance-revelry with Gopis including Radha, with all restraint abandoned, and every Gopi having Krishna as her dance-partner at one

and the same time) is a later addition, as a result of the imaginative flight of the mind of romantic poets fond of amorous indulgence. Kshatriyas (warriors) were allowed to indulge in hunting. It is permitted even now. They were, however, expected to hunt dangerous (carnivorous) animals. There has not been any warrior to match Bhishma Pitamah in bravery: Arjun was just a school-boy in comparison to him. The custom of gambling was very much prevalent (and very popular) in those times, no laws were there to prohibit it. Bhim's will was very strong in this respect, so that the dice would come up as he desired. He was, therefore, removed from active playing of the game. The troubles, which are referred to as having been suffered by Arjun, are all quite correct. Kichak had been killed by Bhim.”

In reply to a query about the birth of Bhishma Pitamah from Ganga, the dictation of Lord Krishna continued: “Ganga is not a goddess. It is only a current of water, in which medicinal qualities are present. This (story) is only with a view to establishing the prestige of Ganga. Bhishma Pitamah was the son of a princess, who was resident of (the region called) Pandu-desh. She was very brave. She thought of, and also took up practices for giving birth to a brave son, who may be matchless. She lived with her husband, having this thought in her mind. All else in this connection is exaggeration. The story concerning the boatman's daughter is wrong. She was a Kshatriya, who had agreed for marriage under certain conditions. Nobody maintained the dignity of the Kshatriya Dharma (obligations) by observing is better than Bhishma Pitamah. He alone is the example after King Ram Chandra (of Ayodhya). I want that the adulterations in these various ancient books be corrected through you. On (correction of) Mahabharat having been completed, you may ask me about Ramayana. Many additions have been made even in the Vedas. The volume of the Vedas was not so huge originally (as it exists now). It is regrettable that you do not know Sanskrit. The correct interpretation of the Vedas, that is its sum and substance, in brief words you comprehend from your guide. At the time of initiation, the principles will be the same as mine during my lifetime. Your Guide shall help you in this regard also, since modifications (in those principles

externally) will be needed with respect to the (changed) times. The (dominating) class cannot persist now; its time has come. Your life will be spent working. You will have to establish my prestige (anew); and your Guide will remain with you. He will issue orders that will be my orders. Your connection to me is direct as well as through the mediumship (of your Guide). Work as circumstances may require (directly connected or through mediumship). My powers shall all come to you through your Guide. Orders can be direct also.”

Revered Master’s dictation: “Revered Lord Krishna has reserved a huge treasure for you. I have been a pointed (to work) after your physical veiling (as well). This is God’s command. As such there can be no escape from it. I have given indications earlier also, that proposals are under consideration (to this effect). Your perfect merging will not be found in anyone else.”

The dictation continued, in reply to a query from M1: “Disciples will be able to acquire merging in you to the limit just short of prophethood. Do not transmit to anybody from the point of prophethood. This has been made reserved for someone else. The knot (of this secret) shall be unraveled later. Nobody has understood you.”

16-10-1944

Dictation from Lord Krishna: The Mahabharat war continued for eighteen days. Therein people from other countries were included. Many of them worked as load-carriers. The story of Babhru Vahan (Arjun’s son born to an Assamese tribal princess, who later on defeated his brave uncles and father) is correct. Such a brave person has never been born as yet. Guru Drona had much capability. He was a master of archery. Almost everybody received education in that discipline from him. However, there remained a very great shortcoming in his character, which is concerned with the story of the (tribal) Bhil youth.



He (Drona) did not (properly) appreciate the [The reference here is to the story of the Bhil youth named Eklavya, considered unworthy being only a low caste tribal. He went back and started practicing archery before a clay image of Guru Drona; and acquired much expertness. Once the princes who had learnt archery from Guru Drona went in the forest for hunting and other games. A dog of their party started barking at Eklavya, who was busy practicing by himself. Feeling disturbed, Eklavya shot some arrows that just filled the open mouth of the dog to stop its barking without injuring it. The disciplines of

Guru Drona were astonished at such a feat; and Arjun particularly felt shocked to learn from Eklavya that he considered himself as a disciple, actually Eklavya, who claimed to be his disciple, was a superior-most. Thereupon guru Drona went to Eklavya; and on being addressed as master by him, asked for the free or wage due to the teacher from the disciple, (Guru-Dakshina). On Eklavya asking as to what he would like to have from him as Guru Dakshina, Guru Drona demanded the right-hand thumb of Eklavya, to destroy his expertness and superiority as an archer. Eklavya at once cut off his right thumb, and presented it to the Guru. The story goes further to culminate in Eklavya continuing his practice with the left hand to retain his expertness and superiority.]

“This was against the principles of Kshatriya Dharma (warrior obligations). Brahims were prohibited to use armament. (Drona being Brahim, and performing Kshatriya obligations) both of his actions were against the principles.

The story of Parashu Ram and Bhishma Pitamah is also true. He had a long life. Shikhandi was a eunuch. That story is also true.

[Anecdote under reference: Parashu Ram is treated as a human incarnation of God, immediately preceding Rama, Bhishma Pitamah learnt archery from Parashu Ram. Bhishma had taken vow never to have any claim to kingship, and also never to marry and produce children as possible contenders to kingship, in order to facilitate marriage of his father king Shantanu to Satyawati Matsyagandha, who had desired an agreement that

her progeny alone should have the claim to kingship, as a precondition to her marriage with king Shantanu. She had two sons, the elder having died before being married. Bhishma took away by force three daughters of the king of Kashi at the time of their free choice of husbands in an assembly of princes according to the custom of that time. Two younger daughters were married to the surviving young step-brother of Bhishma; but the eldest princess of Kashi complained that she had determined to have a certain king as husband; and Bhishma had obstructed the fulfillment of her heart's choice by bringing her by force to the Kuru Kingdom. Bhishma, thereupon, sent this princess Amba with full honour and respect to king Shalva of her intended choice with the request that she be accepted not only as a daughter of the king of Kashi but also as the illustrious princess of the Kuru Kingdom, offered in marriage to King Shalva. Shalva refused to marry her, as he considered it as insulting to his valour. Amba returned to Bhishma, and asked him to marry her as he had taken her by force and prevented the fulfillment of her heart's desire in a natural and customary honourable way. Bhishma expressed his helplessness due to his vow sworn to his step-mother, and offered to marry her to his step-brother or to any person of her choice most honourably. Amba became very furious and insisted that under the circumstances, Bhishma must marry her himself and nothing else. When Bhishma insisted on his helplessness, Amba went to Parashu Ram for help and justice. Parashu Ram came with her to convince and force Bhishma to have her as his wife or else fight with him. Bhishma most humbly expressed his helplessness, whereupon there was a fight between Parashu Ram and Bhishma for several days. Bhishma could not be defeated. Parashu Ram went away disgusted; and vowed that he would no more accept any Kshatriya as his disciple. Amba immolated herself on the pyre, after many austerities; and vowed that she would avenge her indignity against Bhishma in due course. Subsequently she was born as a daughter to King Drupada, father of Draupadi; but later lived as a male warrior. In the great war, when it seemed impossible to vanquish Bhishma as first commander-in-chief of Durodhana's army, he was respectfully approached by Lord Krishna and Arjun to show the way to vanquish him.

He narrated the long story and said that he would not use arms against Shikhandi, who was really the reincarnation of Amba, who had vowed to avenge her indignity by becoming instrumental to Bhishma's death. Next day Lord Krishna put Shikhandi in the forefront, whereupon Bhishma hung his head and left the arms. Thereupon Lord Krishna made Arjun, under cover behind Shikhandi, pierce Bhishma's body with arrows all-over. Finally Bhishma fell down from his chariot and rested for several months on the bed of arrows to die at his own will when the sun crossed over to the northern hemisphere of the earth. Amba could thus avenge the wrong done to her, by causing Bhishma's vanquishment and death.]

Bhishma Pitamah never budged one millimeter from his principles worthy of a Kshatriya. I had to adopt many clever devices to end the great war (in favour of the Pandava brothers). The elephant was really named Ashwatthama. Yudhishtira even then did not tell a lie. I just managed to keep the second part of the statement drowned in the noise of drums, conchshells and other instruments, so as not to reach Guru Drona's ears. It is wrong that King Yudhishtira had to cross the hell due to speaking a lie once.

Story under reference: After Bhishma had been vanquished, the army of Duryodhana was placed under the command of Guru Drona, who was also invincible, so long as he was using arms. He had very great love for his son named Ashwatthama; and had vowed that he would not survive his hon. Under Lord Krishna's clever device, this son of Drona was led away fighting to a very long distance. Then Bhim killed an elephant also named Ashwatthama. There was an all round noisy announcement that Ashwatthama had been killed, causing a very great shock to and disheartening Guru Drona, who was still not ready to believe the rumour, so forcefully announced by everybody he met. He knew that King Yudhishtira was staunchly truthful; and so he went to him for unquestionable verification. Yudhishtira, unflinching even by Lord Krishna's advice said "yes, Ashwatthama has been killed, be it man or elephant." Drona could hear only the first part of the statement: the other part-"be it man or elephant" was drowned in the deliberate noise of various instruments, managed as a device by Lord Krishna. Guru

Drona left the arms, and sat in a kind of depression or meditation to end his life through yogic practice. Thereupon Dhrishtha Dyumna, the other brother of Draupadi, chopped off Guru Drona's head with his sword to fulfil a vow taken earlier by him. Ashwatthama, who was immortal, avenged his father's death through deceit, by wiping out the entire family of King Drupada, including Draupadi's five young sons, in due course. It is also narrated in the Mahabharat, that King Yudhishtira, due to this slight wavering in speaking unalloyed truth, was taken to heaven through hell, where he was surprised find many good and virtuous people, who were later transferred to heaven, from where sinful people like Duryodhana etc. were shifted to hell, after the enjoyment of the fruition of the little virtuous actions was over.]

Duryodhana had to reside in hell for a very long time, since he has not left the slightest lacunae in his attempts to dishonor Draupad. All those who are killed on the battlefield do not get into heaven allotted to their fortune. Only those who suffer martyrdom for right cause, and whose character has been unblemished, entertain hope (for attaining to heaven).”

Revered Master's verification: “All that Lord Krishna has told you Dictation from Lord Krishna continued: Ashwamedh Yajna is correct. A horse was left free to move. If someone held it, he would have to fight the king performing the sacrifice (Yajna). When the horse was brought back to its starting place, a declaration of conquest of the world, trodden over by that horse, was made and the sacrificial fire was lit, in which the horse was sacrificed and offered as oblation to the fire. Gomedha Yajna is interpolated; and those responsible for it are other ones. The story of the ox, under reference (in your discussions) is wrong. [Note: There was discussion concerning a reference in Mahabharat some where to the practice of a certain king getting one thousand oxen killed daily for eating and feasting.] Many stories are introduced in Mahabharat, which cast an ill effect on customs and traditions of the Hindus. All these are imaginary constructions. Many other things written in it are beyond comprehension, and no intelligent person believes them. Subsequent to the downfall of Hindus, which started

after the great war, man interpolations were made by Brahmins on their own, and in case of some others they were pressurized to do so that people may shift over from Hinduism to other religions. The blind people themselves indulged in cutting the throat of their own progeny. These people had no tendency to die for what was right and true. That is the condition of degenerate times. That (dying for rightness and truth) was the wont of the warrior (Kshatriya) class. The priests had developed ill intentions even during my times.”

Dictation from Reverend Prophet Mohammed: “I have issued orders for the disconnection of systems. The soul has been withdrawn and an atmosphere of wilderness has started to manifest. Destruction, however, has not started yet. Indications have no doubt come into being. There is a need to work and try. The elders, who the really revered, have merged in the Ultimate Being, and have withdrawn their connections.”

At 10 P.M. the last remaining system got smashed and a new one started.

17-10-1944

Dictation from Reverend Prophet Mohammed: “You did good work during yesternight.”

Remark from angel Gabriel: “The systems have ended. These people indulged in terrible tyrannies. The whole area needs to be overhauled.” In the morning of October 16<sup>th</sup>, awakening of the condition of Qutub in R2 was set in. In the morning of 17<sup>th</sup> also transmission for (the awakening of) the same point was administered.

Dictation from Reverend Master Lalaji Saheb: “Warn R2 that if he ever goes against my orders. I shall snatch away (everything from him). Those who have performed initiations on my hand and whose connection to me is not direct, i.e. those who are not initiated by me are all cancelled. N1 has done this quite a lot. Initiations on my hand (performed by N1) all stand cancelled. In the future, all initiations to be performed, will be done in the

new system. Whoever enters this new systems viz. Sant Mat, shall be required to recite the Gayatri incantation (Mantra) as compulsory.”

Dictation from Lord Krishna (5.00 P.M.): “Whatever bravery of Arjun is reputed, was all due to my help. Bhim never hesitated to fight. He was not very intelligent. An example of wisdoms exceeding that of King Yudhishtira is not available. An example of will (power and right intentions) more than Bhishma Pitamaha hard to find. After Rama’s incarnation, his (Bhishma) was the second place in this respect. Obedience (and subservience) to one’s father more than his cannot be found.”

18-[101-1944](#)

Dictation from Revered Master (8.30 P.M.): “Move sage Agastya for effecting political change just today. Thereafter, work shall be assigned to M1 by me. Just now (the angle of) my eye on B1 has undergone a change. This fellow is creating complexities. You are dealing concessions. If I had not possessed this capacity, those people would have finished my spiritual assembly (Satsang). I have done away with complexities. I am dealing softly in consideration of A1.”

Submission by M1: “A1 had no consideration for us.”

Reply: “Goodness unto the virtuous; badness for the vicious (a Persian proverb).”

At 9.30 P.M. Revered Master informed: “The status of Qutub has been bestowed on dear R2 from God’s Almighty Court. May God’s benignancy be always with him. ‘O brother, thine is the great sepulcher of worship (a Persian half couplet).”

Communication from sage Agastya: “The star of the British (kingdom) has plunged down. This has brought happiness to me; and I have praise (for it). I had come to know that you have been assigned a special duty. I offered prayer also for you. God has accepted (it). There will be friendship between you and me; and we shall be helpful to

each other. The times have changed a great deal. What has been achieved by you shall be difficult to come to anybody's fortune among Hindus. Such a personality has not manifested since the period of the incarnations of Lord Rama. All this is your Guide's miracle. A Samartha Guru of His caliber has never been born. I bless you and get yoked to my work. The ancient treatises of India have not gone anywhere. A huge treasure lies with me. It will be available at the proper time. The delay is only till orders from God are received. Be perfectly confident. The discipline of (ancient) archery too has not been lost. The stock of that is also safe with me. I have given instructions to sage Atri. Whatever work be in store for him. You assign it to him."

Revered Master's dictation directed to M1: "I am feeling so happy today that a person like dear Ram Chandra came into being through me. If I permit him to apply full force, he (Ram Chandra) can turn up the whole earth. I, however, have not structured his tendency so as to entertain thoughts to that effect. Such a personality shall not come now. If somebody may study his earlier life and circumstances, many such things will be found therein as will be noted in the biographies of some great personalities in some form or the other. He has been dealt to such harms through thought, as are dealt in a manifest way to great personalities. His initial condition which he is often able to remember, and compare also with his state, is what came to the lot of sages after traversing all stages. The times, however, did not retain that state. Here is the person whose biography needs to be written down. I have deliberately removed him from the work of destruction; and what has been assigned (to him) is Nature's command, so that he may not in his usual way be (unduly) hasty, which may happen to be against (the course of) Nature. "Tell R2 that this is a high status. He should remain careful."

19-10-1944

Revered Master's dictation: "I was in high spirits at the time. I had ordered dear Ram Chandra to awaken the condition of Qutub-Ul-Aqtaab in R2 immediately. His opinion, however, proved correct. I called R2 and observed him to find that he was really not yet fit (for that status). He should remain hopeful. I could not form a proper estimate out of love. I found myself in such high spirits today that I could not contain myself. R2 was granted the status of Qutub-Ul-Aqtaab (Dhruadhipati); and M1 was raised to the status of Ghous. May they enliven my name. When nobody else was available. I helplessly had to cool my heightened spirit with dear Ram Chandra. Now I am calm. Now listen to what I have to say about the status of dear Ram Chandra. Imagination and supposition is incapable of forming an estimate of it. His status has been raised further yesternight by the power of the Lord of Preservation (Vishnu Shakti). He has been permeated; and the power subservient to that has been ordered to work in accordance with his (Ram Chandra) instructions. Just this had been communicated to him last night by sage Agastya. Dear Ram Chandra correctly grasped the cause of my heightened spirits. The reason was that I became full of enthusiasm to observe the status of dear Ram Chandra. This has been my condition since yesternight. VI committed a mistake by going away (early yesternight)."

Dictation from Lord Krishna (concerning the principles of living under the new system of spiritual discipline): "The principles of life should be most simple. The habit of speaking truth should be most simple. The habit of speaking truth should be developed. Abstinence from (useless) audio-visual pleasures. Affection to children. Respect for elders. Service to parents. Honest living. Remaining well intentioned. Having no covetous eye on what belongs to somebody else. Avoidance of adopting a threatening attitude to others. Trying to keep cool and calm. Restraint on utterances that may cause



hurt to somebody's heart. In spite of all these (principles) drawing out one's sword in the face of the enemy is not (to be) forbidden, but it should be remembered that this (drawing out one's sword) should be for the defence of somebody (including oneself). Prayer and worship (Sandhya) should be performed twice daily. In view of the altered times, I have not ordered Sandhya a third time. Gayatri is essential. These are ordinary principles, which everybody ought to observe.

“I had done away with rituals in my time; and laid the main emphasis on elevation of thought. Love was its main element. Greater emphasis was given on the way of surrender and seeking shelter (Sharanagati), as the time of Kaliyuga (age of low capacity) was near at hand. Mental power had started bidding farewell. The practice of celibacy (Brahmacharya) had begun to deteriorate. The principles enunciated by me are still applicable. My incarnation was to make this affair easier (and simpler). By Sandhya I mean whatever devices may be possible for union with God, or whatever may be prescribed by (a competent) guide. Another kind of Sandhya, like the ritualistic one, i.e. reciting incantation (Mantra) etc. meaning thereby that what people of different Samaj (Arya Samaj, Brahmo Samaj, Deva Samaj etc.) do, may also not (be altogether) forbidden.”

Revered Master's instruction: “In the genealogical tree, ‘Om Tat Sat’ will be written to start with.”

20-10-1944

At 8.20 P.M. conditional permission to impart training was granted to M8 by M1, certified by Shri Ram Chandraji of Shahjahanpur.

Dictation from Revered Master after 8. P.M.” “B1 had started certain practice. Your writings have created havoc. His (B1) power has been snatched off according to the need.”

21-10-1944

Dictation from Revered Master: “The above-mentioned principles (dictated by Lord Krishna) are concerned (mainly) with practice. God’s entity should be taken to be one. Useless kinds of worship should be abstained from. Religious bigotry is to be detested. God alone is worthy of worship’ and as such God alone is to be worshipped. Guru should be honoured (and respected). Such principles are to be adopted as may cause benefit to others. Living should be made so simple that on seeing it, people have an impression of good thoughts. I have always been, and am even now, opposed to idol-worship. Its grossness spoils the heart. A promise to this effect should be taken at the time of initiation. Otherwise also observance of all these principles of good conduct is essential. Idol worship is to be strictly prohibited. If the Ghous of Najda (Arabian plateau) may like to join the (new) system, he too should be required to accept observances of these principles. I think it will be good if this (new) system be named ‘Sahaj Marga’. I do not like any adulteration of Mayavic (phenomenal) elements in it, which may create upsetting trends in it and cause sectarian (or fractional) conflicts (and quarrels). As regards designation, the name suggested by M1 viz. ‘Satpad Panth’ can also be alright. However, there is no need now to change it. Let it (Sahaj Marga) remain, just as it is.

“The method of transmission will remain unaltered. In case of ritualistic practices (like reciting incantations etc.) changes may be introduced according to particular mental tendencies in keeping with ancient Indian (Hindu) traditions. This will be known in proper time. I shall be telling these sorts of new methods also to dear Ram Chandra. If somebody may need some special practice for some special purpose of warding off (or correction) etc., he may consult him (Ram Chandra). If proper care is not taken of such a tremendous personality (as that of Ram Chandra), who knows what may come to happen

(all of a sudden). I am telling the event of the previous night to M1. Since dear Ram Chandra has an inventive temperament, he entertained a thought yesterday as to what effective method costing least labour may be there to have a large number of sages divested of their spiritual status. As such, he could comprehend the method in a dream yesternight; and he immediately started its application. I immediately introduced the antidote and compensated the harm. The method is worth nothing and quite unique. (It is, however, to be strictly confidential).”

22-10-1944

VI is initiated in accordance with Revered Master’s instructions, by M1, just before 12.00 noon.

24-10-1944

Revered Master’s dictation: “Today VI is brought up to the region of Kubra at 10 A.M. Sughra is called Pinda Desh (organic region). Kubra is called Brahmanda (cosmic region), and Ulia, para Brahmanda Mandal (para cosmic region). Beyond that starts Satpad (region of purity of being). Qudsa (region of piety) is the top condition of Satpad. For the reply from the Ghous of Najda, a waiting period of three days may be allowed. Your method for snatching off (spiritual status) is best.”

Revered Master dictated the basic principles concerning aspirants under the system of Sahaj Marga:

1. In our fold much emphasis is laid on faith (Aitaqad). That is the first step (of the staircase).

To ripen it is every aspirant’s duty. Without this proper benefit is not derived.

2. Every aspirant must first decide in his heart whether this particular method shall do him/her good; and this will be evident to him/her through (his/her own) experience.

Then there should be an orientation to ripen faith; and compliance of one's guide's orders should be considered as duty.

3. It should be made comprehensible to the aspirants that what is being done to them (through transmission) is not mesmerism (hypnotism) but the way of connection (the aspirant) to the Ultimate Being; and that this is the main thing (under this new system viz. Sahaj Marga). So long as an aspirant does not decide well in his heart and comes to have trust in the guide, there is no need to make him/her start.
4. The consideration of character is the main thing and Brahmacharya (celibacy) is also strictly essential. This is the way of devotion (Bhakti), and whatever else may be achieved alongwith."

25-10-1944

Revered Master's dictation: "The merging of myself in you, that I have brought about, has never been done by any elder (Master) in his successor-representative till now. Your movement has gone still further. The matter is settled. The (proposal) for movement ahead is that you be made completely rid of Samskaras (impressions of past actions); and in order to maintain physical existence, Vishwa (universe) may be taken (to be your form). This matter has, however, been left (entirely) to me. I am worried most about my work. Your age is just nothing yet. I am, however, telling something to be noted for future reference, that it is all the miracle of Master's love. I understand there has been never such an example on earth to this date."

Dictation addressed to M1: "You (M1) have no awareness of your state. Excepting dear Ram Chandra, yours is also a unique example. The knot of this secret shall open afterwards-may your life be long by God's Grace. I have brought a very happy tiding for you. From this day onwards, whomsoever he (Ram Chandra) will transmit to, he/she will get connected to Lord Krishna. This is the very first connection, that will start with him (Ram Chandra). This condition contains a some what grayish green hue in it. I liked both of you (Ram Chandra and M1) to be benefitted; and hence gave orders to you.

“The condition of dear Ram Chandra has undergone a metamorphosis, the zenith of which has not been arrived as yet. The source of transmission (to him, at the roof of this metamorphosis) is to be kept confidential. In him the connection combining me and Lord Krishna has started.

“During my life-time, I have very often been taking (my) representatives to my side. Today I took dear Ram Chandra to my side. Nobody can have the power to tolerate my taking him to my side in this free state (of myself). My taking somebody to my side means something. It means that I have left no wealth (with me) that has not been bestowed to him by me. He is over flooded with (divine) wealth from head to foot. I had once said that there is effect in the dust of his feet. Now I shall say that the dust on which he happens to tread, shall acquire the characteristic of the burnt powder of the Tur mountain, as the proverb goes (about the mountain on which Moses had the vision of Divine Light, turning the mountain to burnt ashes and throwing Moses into unconsciousness). This (dust tread upon by dear Ram Chandra) will have the effect of awakening the vision of the Ultimate. This (however) is not to be taken to mean that the dust on which he treads be thrown into one’s eyes. This narration is meant to express the idea of piety.

“A new kind of transmission will start with dear Ram Chandra, which is to be designated as ‘Ganga Jamuni’ i.e. a combination of my and Lord Krishna’s transmission.” [Revered Lalaji Saheb belonged to Fathegarh in the district Farrukhabad of Uttar Pradesh – northern state – of India, which is at the bank of the river Ganges, while Lord Krishna’s place of birth and chief activity is Mathura (and its vicinity) in the same state of India, situated at the banks of the river Jamuna. As such the combination of the names of these two sacred rivers is designated as ‘Ganga Jamuni’.]

26-10-1944

Revered Master's dictation: "He (Ram Chandra) has brought about a marvelous invention; and made the matter extremely easy. But this work can be possible only by him. The method is correct and people shall derive best benefit. There is moreover no harm in adopting it.

"The new method is like this: First of all the points of the organic region be all cleaned through force of will. Then the points and areas of the cosmic region upto where the aspirants is to be taken, be cleaned. Thereafter the points of the organic region be opened in the natural way' and just like that the points ahead of that (in the cosmic region and beyond) be opened in the natural way. If transmission is oriented to both at one and the same time, the perfection of the organic region will also be achieved, and the stages ahead of that too will be getting perfected side by side. The (application of this method, however, certainly needs celibacy (Brahmacharya); and the brain (mind) must be sufficiently strong.

"The second technique that can be used consists in opening points and stages in accordance with the stage of the strength of an aspirant's heart and brain. But this estimate can not be there in every person. As such, everybody should not start using this (technique). It will remain in his (Ram Chandra) lot alone."

Dictation addressed to M1: "Can such an example be found anywhere else? He (Ram Chandra) has something still more in his mind viz. enabling the aspirant to traverse all stages side by side. But there will be nobody to take up such training. For all these things the instructions are (to be noted): love is the (main) condition for the aspirant, since he/she is certain to develop (perfectly) but the danger of going against (the guide) shall persist (unless perfect love is there)."

The dictation, as usual, continued: "Only I know your status (and capacity). Your

training since the very start has been just like this, viz. you always grasped everything; and your assessment was ever correct. I also never concealed anything from you, nor shall ever hold back anything. As such, I am imparting this (very special) instruction to you: ‘Whatever terrible hardships you may have to undergo, you should not open that eye (i.e. activate that power), which Lord Krishna had done during Mahabharat.’ That power is active to this extent automatically; and that is Lord Krishna’s gift. If Lord Krishna orders for some work, you should open (the eye); but it must be for that work alone. It is not to be used for any other work. I have bestowed immense power on you for destruction: You can use it (anyway).”

Dictation addressed to M1 at 9.00 P.M.: “You were getting too much worried and worked up about the idea that some such invention be possible that whoever is made devoid of spiritual condition, be aware of it immediately. He (Ram Chandra) has invented something like that, viz. the purpose be served without the need of snatching off (the spiritual condition). The technique consists in stopping and solidifying through one’s will wherever the effect of spirituality may exist (in the person concerned) even upto the sound or vibration (effect)-technically called Shabda. This will turn the concerned person’s inner state to something like stone, which may be made as solid as desired. This technique is for teaching a lesson (to the person concerned); but this should not be used unless one has no other choice. (Pause) Just now he has introduced a modification, which has made me bounce up (out of joy). May God bestow upon him yet higher status and make my name live (for ever). The modification is something quite natural and I have mentioned about it also earlier somewhere. It consists in solidifying (the condition) from one’s left side, and retain the power of one’s right side for reopening it. Now this technique is perfect (Pause) He has made this system., viz., Sahaj Marga, so easy that the labour of huge time is saved. But alas! Where are the aspirants (to reap the benefit)!! If somebody is trained through these methods without creating capacity, he/she cannot appreciate it, nor can proceed on through the strength of the

trainer or guide.

“It is more than twelve years since my physical veiling. During this period, the harm suffered by our brethren, i.e. disciples, is known to God or to my heart alone. The reason is that during my life – time, my ‘subtle body was present in every body which ensured their security and brought about their spiritual progress. With my physical veiling subtle bodies also went with me, and they became devoid of this blessing. As such, during this period (of more than twelve years), whoever liked, dealt harm to them (disciples), and misguided them one way or the other, trying to keep them away from me. When that (gap) period came to an end, and the Omnipotent Nature boiled up to come to Its own, a (suitable) personality again came into being, whose subtle body is now present in them; and security is ensured (again) in every way. As such there is always need for the controlling agency of the Master, and just this is the meaning of the successo-representative (Sajjada Nashin).

“If something remarkable may happen, one should immediately get oriented to the (Master’s ) controlling agency.”

27-10-1944

Revered Master’s dictation: "I am telling something very remarkable. If some time there is an occasion of difficult conflict and confrontation with someone, who may be really perfect, then one should merge oneself in the controlling agency. Then my own power itself shall start functioning. There is no difference between the guide and the successor-representative. Some day I had referred to you as Vasu in some form. These are powers of Nature; and the entire solar and terrestrial order depends on them. There are eight Vasus. Now I am telling something about him (Ram Chandra). He is controlling the Vasus. This status did not fall to the lot of anybody except him since the beginning of creation. This is a matter of great secrecy, that I have revealed. I am also surprised that



this stationary residence is nowhere. Whatever step is there, it is forward.

“You (Ram Chandra) have been granted a place among prophets (Nabi). Angel Gabriel has just brought that same message. Yours is the second place after Reverend Lord Krishna. This is the beginning. The end is still far off. God willing, my dear one is to be honoured even with further prosperity. Your words shall function as commands. The status of Prophet starts with religious leadership (Imam). The condition starts earlier than that. That is also called the condition of Prophethood (Nabooat). I was in that condition, and had transferred it to you upto that state in my life-time.”

Dictation addressed to M1: “Nobody understood me during my life time. If people had appreciated me and taken work from me, I would have survived further on. I had compromised (myself to the fact) that people did not need me. All of my capacity and whatever gifts. I had received from my Master, was all transferred by me to him (Ram Chandra) and put in a dormant state. Mark the fineness of dear Ram Chandra’s brain: he has grasped the technique immediately.

“Revered Lord Krishna had arrived together with me, and transmitted to dear Ram Chandra. M1 has also derived benefit to some extent. He (Lord Krishna) has blessed dear Ram Chandra to be filled up (fully) with spirituality; and also made provision of butter and candy (which Lord Krishna is reputed to be very fond of for his own consumption as well as distribution among playmates) for him, and to whomever it may reach through him (Ram Chandra). There will be no dearth or scarcity. Dear Ram Chandra remained linked only to me in thought. It was disrespect to some extent. It has been pardoned. He should take care in future. There has been some more progress occurring in him. Lord Krishna has put Kuber (god of wealth and prosperity) under his (Ram Chandra) charge; and this prosperity shall increase on and on beyond him in the system. (Plan came to view.)”

Submission by M1 (time 9.00 P.M.): “When Master got located in one disciple, others remain frustrated (and unfulfilled)... Etc.”

Answer: “You might have studied geography. The sun’s rays fall directly and sharply on the equator. Beyond certain angle the sun’s rays, on account of the distance etc. do not create that (amount of) heat, but remain providing light to that region continuously. Just this is the reply to this thing, viz. why my current has become located on and is going straight to someone. In other words, it can be that if one who has acquired closeness to me to a certain degree, my ray falls sharp on him/her to the same extent. The shining power remains one and the same, i.e. my eye is the same for everybody and I consider everyone as my own.”

28-10-1944

Revered Master’s dictation: “It has now become very difficult to stop dear Ram Chandra from climbing up in the (sphere of) the Ultimate Being, where is real residence is located. One device comes to comprehensive viz. he may start transmitting to me when such a condition should arise; and I shall immediately control and situation. He has carved out his position sufficiently there, and tremendous expansion has started.

“I have just revealed the state of Ram Chandra at birth to both of you (M1 and R2). It was the same transmission which condition came down with him. This condition was purely of Zaat (Ultimate Being), without the least touch of Maya (phenomenal materiality) in it. I too had come own together with a state, which was akin to it.”

Dictation from Lord Krishna: “For (your) going to Naimisharanya (Neemsar) after Mathura is just my own order. There is no need for Ayodhya now. There, the priests, playing hosts to pilgrims, have created many evils.

“Destroy K.. The particular temple at P... had been constructed by left-way (Vama Margin) Tantrika worshippers to defame me. Destroy it immediately. There is one place close to it, which is pious.”

Revered Mastre’s instruction: “At the time of the destruction of K..., you should throw a ring all around, so that nobody (needing destruction) may be able to escape. The blood of the martyrs of K... is even now calling for its destruction. The sight of their restlessness and pain at their last moments is live before my eyes. At such sacred places, there was (organized) bloodshed. The blood of kings has also been shed therein. They have shed the blood of such persons as were responsible for the maintenance of an entire world.

“The sight (of happenings) at that particular temple is passing (like a reel) in front of my eyes. Dishonouring of mothers (and sisters) there has brought bloody tears to my eyes (even) on my being free (from physical bondage). Such cruel persons have to be dealt with (there) as may not be present even amongst tyrants. The race, which consists of elements that assign to themselves no job except sucking the blood (of others), deserves being entirely ruined and destroyed. It was the race whose flag has flown over the whole world, which has satiated the biggest and best people with the nectar of its spiritual attainments. Piety was (developed) to the extent that every ion of air was emitting its fragrance. And now this day of (degeneration) is here! If you observe with intuitive vision, you shall find every particle of these (persons) filled up with that condition, which has its pull towards hell. One great secret, I am telling you: in case of someone, whose condition, which has its pull towards hell. One great secret, I am telling you: in case of someone, whose condition does not indicate any possibility of improvement, and whose actions are to take that person to hell, his/her plan (to this effect) starts developing in hell during his/her life-time.

“The work of Brindavan be assigned to M1. He should do it with full force. R2 should

remain drawing out life of everyone, making exceptions in case of those who are good and God-worshipping. The work of P... is to be done by you (Ram Chandra) and M1 together.”

Dictation from Lord Krishna: “There is a temple L.B. in Brindavan, wherein corruption has started. Try to remove it (corruption).

“If you find it impossible, pull it (temple) down to pieces. You will need to go into that temple, and have to study the climate there, and only then form an opinion (to take the final decision). It is a fact that I had a very great love for the (river) Yamuna. I have played and reveled a lot at its banks. Although its status is nothing more than a river, but its sight is such as to compel (us) living on in Mathura. Try to change its (river) direction. I understand, there will be no appreciation of your worth in the temples. You will be considered as a dry, unimpressive fellow. It is not everybody’s job to discover light. My full power shall be there with you, because it is a very big job that has been assigned to you.

“There are certain (religious) buildings standing at sacred spots. These shall be razed down (sometime). The building close to the (river) Yamuna was constructed for establishing the possession of a sacred spot and dishonouring ladies. Many idols are buried in the big building. The red mosque is coming up in your thought: my place of birth is close to that. During the time of Kamsa (legendary maternal uncle of Lord Krishna, who killed the seven elder brothers of Lord Krishna, as soon as they were born, and made many attempts to kill Lord Krishna, but was finally killed by Him) it was a prison. My mother was incarcerated in it. There is also a (sacred) place at Nandagaon (village close to Barsana where Rahda was living, to which Lord Krishna’s foster-parents Nanda and Yashoda moved later due to difficulties at their original place of residence, Gokul) where the washermen work now at the river-bank. There is a mound of earth close to your (Ram Chandra) father-in-law’s house. The well of Kubja has really got

concealed under the earth. The place designated by that name is not the right one.

[Reference: a maid-servant of Kamsa happened to have good features but a deformed body, due to a hump, on account of which she was nicknamed Kubja. When Lord Krishna went to Mathura, she met Him near a well. She felt great love for Krishna and offered Him a scented paste, she was carrying for Kamsa, to apply all-over the body before taking bath. Krishna applied it on His own body and then pressing her feet with His foot, He raised her up putting His hand below her chin. She immediately got rid of her physical deformity and invited the Lord to her residence. He went there later after Kamsa had been killed.]

If the rich lady of the business community, whose progeny are adopted but do not survive, may reveal these places in accordance with your bidding, her family not remain devoid of continuation of light in the genealogical order further ahead. [Here reference is to some accursed family.] I also promise that in case this lady and her widowed daughters-in-law honour you (and act on your instructions), I will bestow salvation to them at their end. She has served meals to many mendicants and consumed lots of the nectar of their foot-wash (Charnamrit), to no purpose. Now is the opportunity. If she really likes to see, she will find the glimpse of my form in you. This message you may send to her, with perfect self-confidence, to the best extent. In what form the message is to be delivered, will be indicated to you by your Guide. In all these matters you shall receive light from your Guide.”

Revered Master’s instruction: “What Lord Krishna may tell you, you should get verified by me, so that the possibility of missing it may be removed.”

Dictation from Lord Krishna continued: “A den (of bad people) is operating from behind the temple D.D. In all these matters do as directed by your Guide. No better guide can be available. At Mahaban, there is a holy spot covered under a mound of earth.”

Revered Master's orders: "Destroy the temple H.G. just today. An event just now has been prevented from happening there. A pious lady (devoted to her husband) happened to reach there. An attempt was, made to infringe upon her modesty. She immediately prayed to God for protection of her honour. Nature waved up at once; and no harm could be caused to that lady. She was the wife of a crippled person, who would not have been able to protect her. This work is essential above anything else. That temple should group in flames. Make use of the special powers of your present state. Even if you have to sit awake for the whole of this night, this work is not to be stopped. Until I issue some other instruction, this work (of destruction) should continue unabated; and this work is assigned to you only. All other work is to be left aside (for the time being). One thing more is necessary: The homes of all those who were a party to the infringement upon that lady's modesty have to be made devoid of light (to continue the genealogy of their family-line) by the morning."

29-10-1944

Revered Master's dictation: "I have not bestowed powers on you to remain sitting, after absorbing them. These are for use at the time of need. Man becomes free when the question of envy and ownness get obliterated one's life. It requires a lot of time to create it. On (careful) thought, all will be found to possess the same force, which produces their movements. The customs (and traditions) differing from time to time, are to be adopted (and respected). This thing was at its zenith in me. Lord Krishna is the current of Real Ultimate Being (Asal Zaat).

"By designating 'Ganga-Jamuni' transmission, my purpose is also that both of these elements will proceed together; or you may say that my and His (Lord Krishna) current, will remain mixed up, and the whole world will be lighted with you. Its appreciation shall reach people after your physical veiling.

“At Mathura, if you like to stop the spring of Yamuna somewhere, you take help from sage Agastya. Love means automatic inclination of the mind to perform whatever may be ordered by the Master, ie., no hesitation at all in following the order. In case at Mathura your secret is somehow out to the priests (playing host to pilgrims to fleece them) and they oppose you, then you pray to call Lord Krishna together with His well-shaped boomerang (Sudarshan Chakra).”

Dictation from Lord Krishna: “I permit you. My power shall always be at your back. There will be no need for prayer etc. I have assigned a very big duty to you. Whoever will help you in it, shall not remain unfulfilled. There is no need for anxiety. My full force shall be with you, when needed; and your Master just does not leave you alone at anytime. This is called Samartha Guru (capable guide). He is himself the example of his time. I have today fully recompensed you for your love for your Master. Every (fine) hair of your body has started to emit (divine) fragrance. Have expectations for yet beyond.”

Revered Master’s exclamation to M1: “Just see my cleverness, to have included (in Divine Grace) my own ones (you and R2)!”

3010-1944

Revered Master’s dictation: “Today at 9.45 A.M. K2 is perfected in the cosmic region, and dear Ram Chandra has pulled up to the para cosmic region. Now his area of stroll is the spiritual kingdom of that region. I have never seen a better vessel (i.e. capacity) than yours (Ram Chandra). To digest the transmission of such a Great Personality and of such a state, as was given to you yesternight, was just your job! As the proverb runs” ‘digested it even without a belching, even once’. It (transmission) penetrated so as not to leave its trace anywhere. My dear M1, at that time I felt an urge to have an estimate of dear Ram Chandra’s vessel (capacity). I remained filling him continually for fifteen

minutes, but there was no indication of any filling of the vessel. I can say with full confidence that in any other case, such transmission for even half of that time would have resulted in the heart being torn asunder. He remained almost unaware of such a tremendous transmission from me. It appeared to him as something light, as it is during routine Satsang (group sitting). To fill up this vessel is beyond my control May God grant him a yet higher status!

“At 10.35 A.M., I arranged transmission to him from Lord Krishna for seven minutes. The vessel has not even now got filled up.”

Lord Krishna’s remark at the time of transmission: “This vessel is structured by your Master. It is difficult to fill it up.”

Dictation from Revered Master: “Whatever is snatched away by him (Ram Chandra) from various persons is stored up here. If it needs to be returned to somebody, it will be from me, i.e. I shall need to fill anew upto the limit of that person’s condition.

“The method to enlarge the vessel is this: First, transmission is to be given a little more than what the aspirant may be able to absorb; then it should be got digested, and this method is to be continued on and on, to create a high (capacity) vessel. Sometime when the state is enhanced beyond (capacity), there also arises the need to help in digesting it. There should not be pressure on the heart in any case. Otherwise the aspirant’s courage will get (adversely) affected.

“At Mathura, make four to six miles along the bank of the river Yamuna illuminated (spiritually); and it will be better that all of that (area) gets the touch of your feel. At Brindavan also, your work will be just the same. That is a very holy place. The priests have spoilt it. Make a start with their total destruction. The work that you bring (unfinished) there from, will have to be continued in the home as well. The sight of the



river Yamuna at Brindavan is in my view. It still retains the effect (to some extent), because it has not been a place of general approach by common people (like Mathura). Just possible, some order may be received for the place where the brother of H4 has given up his physical frame. He died under enthusiastic intoxication for Lord Krishna.”

Dictation from Lord Krishna: “I had given direct light to the person, referred to by your Master. He is present with me. Write His name in your systems (genealogical) chain, in letters of gold.”

Revered Master’s dictation continued: “Here is a wonderful invention. The heart has a connection with every point. It is the way that takes (the aspirant) upto the highest point (Dhura). In view of this thought, dear Ram Chandra has brought about a tremendous invention. All difficulties are now made easy. The apprehension for a fall has diminished. Holds and hurdles have been got rid of. The method is this: While transmitting to the heart, the thought be taken that the cosmic or para cosmic region is being brought to awakening. The reach of the heart being upto the highest limit, the sublimity of whatever point (or region) be taken in thought, shall blossom, and the path will be clear. For example if the thought for opening cosmic region be taken, the thought shall reach upto that limit, shedding light on all points below it; and this will keep the path always clear. This is the method which every trainer should write on the first page (of his manual notebook). This method can take (the aspirant) upto the higher point; and the method for ahead of that, which is my invention, shall be (kept) confidential. He (Ram Chandra) has comprehended it; but I have not allowed it (to all and sundry). It is a method which can be helpful in opening every point fully. The person, using it, must from a restrictive thought in his/her heart, so that the awakening beyond the (fixed) point does not occur. It will help upto the limit of the approach of the trainer. Whatever structurization of dear Ram Chandra has taken place is the fruit of not only my work but of his labour. (Pause) I had (acquired a special) efficiency, viz. I used to carry over work

from the wakeful to the dreaming (state of consciousness) for completion. (This is to say that whatever work I was not able to complete during my wakefulness, I used to complete it in the dreaming state.)”

31-10-1944

Revelations by Revered Master: “Today at 9.25 A.M. K2 was made to cover the para cosmic region and his point of (prayerful) humility (Ibd) was opened. At 10.35 A.M. the light at the point ahead of that (Ibd) was stimulated; and at 10.50 A.M. permission (for special work) was granted. At 11.55 A.M. the status of Qutub was bestowed on him. May God shower benediction!

“The Ghous of Najda got his spiritual condition totally snatched off yesternight. It was the result of (religious) bigotry that he came to see this day. K2 be instructed to avoid associating with women folk. If somebody comes to him for training, he should tally with me whether training (in that particular case) is to be imparted or not. If my words fail to reach him, he should inquire of dear Ram Chandra. There is no need of filling up every Tom and Dick. Just this instruction is for R2 also. I am telling this for everybody who has authorization.”

Dictation at 5 P.M. addressed to M1: “Yesterday I had mentioned that I carried over work from the wakeful to the dreaming state. I was really an adept in it. However, at that time (of mentioning about it yesterday) I desire to test dear Ram Chandra; and it was the first (such) occasion. I wanted to assess how much (sensuous) craving was still remaining. He got through the test successfully; and the merit of the case is that he comprehended also that I intended to test him (while narrating about my own condition). To keep something secret from such a person, is difficult for me. This matter was something very deep, but it appeared to him as floating on (the surface of) water. That is his personal capability; and God-given. He is simple to look at (only). What is it and

why is it so, dear M1? (Pause for M1's reply.) Yes, you are right, but there is one thing very subtle (and secret) about it, i.e. he has gradually progressed to acquire such adeptness as makes him glued to my remembrance all the time. Just on account of this he misses nothing. Something may possibly be forgotten due to mental weakness.

“These five sublimities, assigned to the chest-region, remain included at every stage above that (organic) region. The shape goes on changing. These drop off beyond the region of piety (Qudsa). Therefrom starts purity (Khuloos).

“Today at 5.35 P.M., I have shattered dear Ram Chandra's last knot; but I do not yet like to tell what it is. Praise unto his comprehension!

He has grasped it. It was just this. He has acquired the capability today to cast aside his body and reach the Ultimate Being. I desire to delay this; but my inward inclination made me helpless. That is his fortune. However, he cannot leave the body. This much I have even now kept under my own control. That I will reveal at the last moment. If the inner tendency makes me helpless, that will be another matter. This state remaining, he shall not at all leave his body before time.”

1-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation at 11.35 A.M.: “Reverend Lord Krishna has asked me to let him (Ram Chandra) be free for work at Mathura. As such, I transfer all the powers needed for that work to him.

“There is no example to match the tyranny perpetrated on the wife of Mandan Mishra by (Adi) Shankaracharya. He could never be rid of the effect of that sin. She was a housewife perfectly faithful to her husband, and entirely firm concerning the performance of her duties. After a discussion with her, he (Shankaracharya) prohibited

education for women. This resulted in their (Hindu) progeny being misguided (and going astray). Mothers could not impart proper education (to children). All this heavy burden (of sin) is still weighing on his neck. He has committed murder of a whole people, and closed the door for future progress. The religious code (and system) that he established was of his own making. There is no order for it in Nature anywhere. In a way, the quality of colour is opposed to the quality of Nature: Its reflection on one's own body comes to be colourful, which is injurious to colourlessness. He (Shankaracharya) had used his will-power to degrade her (Mandan's wife), but he could not deal an harm to her. This is the condition of the crown of the Hindu community, opening one's mouth against whom shall make people turn furious. Saffron garbs are good only in their own (limited) sense: Shankaracharya was undoubtedly celibate (Brahmachari) and also very learned, but he was devoid of spiritual wealth. Mandan Mishra's wife was brought to the state of liberation; and he remained unacquainted to it. Do not force me to reveal more!

“The real service has been done by Swami Dayananda (founder of Arya Samaj) but his life did not last long enough, and he carried away his entire scheme in his breast. His plan had not (properly) got revealed, when he died.

“Sankaracharya has also introduced interpolations in sacred books. I am, anyway, telling one thing to increase your (general) knowledge: The extent to which Tilak (Bal Gangadhar) was capable. Shankaracharya was not (the interpretation of and commentary on the Gita by both Shankara and Tilak is considered significant); Shankaracharya did not have the capacity to grasp the text (of ancient treatises) better than Tilak. He (Shankaracharya) interpolated such material (in sacred books) as may enhance the prestige of his community. By community I do not mean the Hindu community, but the caste wherein he was born. Ascetics (Sanyasins) will be rarely found to be capable; and in those rare case also, it will be their personal culture and capability (instead of being due to the system of asceticism). The reason is that the foundation on which this

structure (of asceticism) has been raised was weak. For example, sand be covered with blotting paper and a building remains concealed (from view) due to the blotting paper. I order you not to rely on anything written by Shankaracharya, even if it may be correct, because on account of being unacquainted to the Sanskrit language, you cannot form an estimate of right and wrong (correctly). It is also not essential to know Sanskrit in order to be an adept in the Science of the Ultimate (Brahma Vidya). My example is (already) there. This does not mean that Sanskrit be not studied. The meaning of this whole sentence, stated above, is that one does not remain devoid of Brahma Vidya due to not having studied Sanskrit. So far as prayer is concerned, it can as well be in the language prevalent at the time. What is needed is the proper feeling (and attitude), so that it (Prayer) be accepted.”

*“Editors Note: Here the reference is to the generally accepted stalwart of contemporary Hindu religion and philosophy – Adi Shankaracharya of the 9<sup>th</sup> century A.D. He is the propounder of the monistic (Advaita) Vedanta school of Indian philosophy, which has been held as the most profound and respectable contribution of India to human culture and philosophy as a whole, during almost the whole of the twentieth century, Adi Shankaracharya was a prodigious Namboodri Brahmin child of Kerala. His family consisted only of himself and his mother, whose permission he was seeking to become an ascetic (Sanyasin) even at the age of five years when he is reputed to have acquired all the existing knowledge of ancient texts concerning religion and philosophy. He could obtain his mother’s permission at the age of eight years, when he is said to have been caught in the jaws of a crocodile while taking bath in a river; and left his home as a recluse, promising to come at the time of his mother’s death and perform her last rites. He performed a number of miracles and won many disciples of much superior age and learning. He started challenging and defeating in discursive contests (Shastrartha) almost all the accepted and established authorities in the field of religion and philosophy in India at that time. He came to Varanasi to have such a contest with Kumarila Bhatta,*

*the accepted authority of Purva Mimamsa (ritualistic Vedic adherents) school of religious practice and philosophical theorizing. As Kumarila Bhatta was engaged at the time in the fulfilment of a penitent vow leading to a sort of painful suicide, he sent Shankaracharya to his (Kumarila) most talented disciple Mandana Mishra for the discursive bout. The contest was arranged with the condition that the defeated party would have to adopt the discipleship and way of life of the victorious one, viz. family life in case Shankara was defeated and ascetic mendicancy (monasticism) if Mandana got vanquished. The wife of Mandana Mishra, named Sharada or Bharati, accepted as the ablest logician of India at the time, was appointed as arbiter and umpire at this contest. Mandana Mishra was defeated, whereupon Sharada herself as the half part of her husband, challenged Shankara to Vanquish her as well before making Mandana as an ascetic disciple and introduce him to the monastic way of life. At first Shankara tried to avoid the situation by saying that respectable wise men did not enter into (discursive) duels with ladies. On Sharada quoting the ancient example of the famous discussion between Yajnavalkya and Gargi in the haydays of the Vedic supremacy, Shankara agreed reluctantly to only answer Sharada's questions to establish his (Shankara omniscience like Yajnavalkya. "For eighteen days this marathon session of questions and answers went on, when at last Sharada hit upon a unique device of putting Shankara on the horns of a dilemma. She asked questions concerning very intimate human sex behavior (Karma Shastra). If Shankarar would reply, he would prove himself to a fake recluse (having entered monastic life at 8 years of age) and if he failed to reply, he would forfeit his claim of omniscience and perfection. It is reputed that Shankara asked Sharada to allow im time to answer; and then leaving his physical body in the care of his disciples in a cave, caused his subtle body to enter mysteriously in the physical body of a just dead young king having three wives; and thus finally returned armed with the required knowledge of sex life to convert Mandana Mishra as Sureshwaracharya, and also establish a seat of his religio-philosophical system, dedicated to the name of Sharada in Gujarat (Sharadapeetha). What actually happened to the real Sharada has been nobody's concern*

*after her enshrinement and commemoration. Shankara died at the age of thirty two at Kedarnath in the Himalayas (about 12000 feet above sea level). A famous anecdote of his life also indicates his relentless strength of character and his effective determination. He fulfilled his promise to his mother, viz. Being with her at the time of her death to perform her last rites. As this is against the orthodox code of ascetic monasticism, his kinsmen felt angered at this violation of the code of ascetic life, to perform some duty like a householder. Nobody was there to assist him to cremate the dead body of his mother, whereupon the young boy pulled down the house, collected all the wood and other combustible material at the door, cut the mother's heavy dead body into three parts, put them one by one on the pyre, set it on fire, and after all the last rites including disposal of the ashes in the river, cursed this entire community of Namboodri Brahmins to have their family cremation ground at their doors, which practice remains prevalent among the orthodox even now. As regards assessment of Shankara's contribution there is a very wide variety of opinions. His brilliance and stamina have earned almost universal acclaim and respect. He is said to have sounded a death knell to Buddhism and almost bundled it out of India, and brought the revival of Hinduism, which had started about one thousand years earlier, to its peakpoint. Swami Vivekananda has pointed out that Shankaracharya got Buddhist monks and priests burnt alive. However Vivekananda, on the other hand, also inaugurated the present renaissance in Indian culture and philosophy, laying highest emphasis on Shankara's absolute (unqualified) monism as the most representative philosophical system of India. This was against the backdrop of the supreme dominance of the British philosopher Bradley's absolute idealism over the worldwide span of the British empire at the close of the nineteenth century. The trend has continued during almost the whole of the twentieth century in Indian universities, to compare Shankara with the tallest of the Western philosophers-Plato, Spinoza, Kant, Bradley and so on. The orthodox Hindu tradition has, however, treated Shankara almost scornfully as a Buddhist in disguise (crypto-Buddhist), and described his doctrine of phenomenal reality (Maya) as absurd theory (Asat Shastra), derived from the non-vedic*

*negativistic atheistic Buddhist view of the world and man. He (Shankara) no doubt tried apparently with great success to weave the cultural unity of India by combining all prevalent paradigms of religious beliefs and approaches to Godhead, but his has also resulted in compromises with and concessions to all sorts of esotericism, and crude practices. His view of the Ultimate stands most comprehensive and even logically most sound, but misses the humility and elasticity of later Vedanta Acharya (teachers), that has to go beyond logic and ratiocination to comprehend the Ultimate Reality in its wholeness. It is also notable that Shankara is succeeded by about one thousand years of comparative darkness and sterility in the field of Indian philosophy and culture. The brilliance and strength of Shankara itself in a way impeded maturity. On my reference about Shankara and Mandana Mishra to Revered Shri Babuji, His characteristic crisp remark was: “He should have honestly accepted his ignorance about sex instead of indulging in something underhand to establish his presumed omniscience.” It is here that Reverd Babuji reveals the dignity of the human limitations, and superiority of ordinariness over prodigious glamour and brilliance; victory that blossoms in the womb of defeat.*

Revered Master’s dictation continued: “Nature has two principles – one positive and the other negative (Asbaat and Nafee). Nafee is the designation for ejection or elimination. When pus is increased, it is eradicated through this power. Asbaat is the name for (the process of) compensating the loss. These very principles are continuously operating since the very start of creation. Whatever comes to be really lacking gets recompensed by devotees; and what happens to be in excess is also brought to normalcy just through them. Nature does not have hands and feet. It is a machine continually at work. You (man devoted to the Ultimate) are the one to weaken, as well as the one to strengthen the machine of Nature. When the machine of Nature is very strong (and functioning well), that period is designated as a good time. The times are said to have suffered a degeneration in proportion to the extent of the machine (of Nature) going weak.



Satyuga, Treta, Dwapara and Kaliyuga are all divisions (of time) with respect to the same (characteristic of strength or weakness of the machine of nature). At the present time, this machine is running very loose; its various parts have gone very weak. As such, Nature's attention is getting oriented to this direction. The result is clear. There is really no secret in Nature. It is something very simple, which is the proof of Master's perfection. The ability to observe (and grasp the relevant and real) in the servant (person of the Master of Lord) is the (necessary) condition. Instruct every Qutub (under you) that whatever difficulties may occur during Satsang (spiritual get together) be solved from here, i.e. through dear Ram Chandra; and whatever order be issued is to be taken as God's order and acted upon.

“Dear Ram Chandra has suggested one method to me which is extremely fine: it has brought the solution of many problems concerning lack and excess of transmission. Every Qutub or a person of a higher state should take the thought (firmly) that whatever has been bestowed beyond (an aspirant's) capacity is transferred to Ram Chandra; and if it has been bestowed correctly, (then) it is being absorbed by and by in the aspirant. Both these thoughts should be there together. Every Qutub should try to increase sensitivity. I jumped up (out of joyful surprise) at this intuitive insight. Really this too can be the method, which dear Ram Chandra suggested. While snatching away (the spiritual state of the Ghous of Najda) the Great Entity with which he (Ghous) was connected has power for absorption as well. Whatever dear Ram Chandra suggested, he improved it also. This thing is perfectly correct and exact, viz. establishing the connection of his Master where the state of Ghous opens, to obtain the desired result (automatically).”

2-11-1944

Revered Master's instructions: “Distribute your work at Mathura so as to allot the lightest work to R2. If the need may arise for help in some heavy work, give power to

him (R2) concerning that (work), and withdraw it after getting the work completed. Allot the work concerning the Jamae mosque to M1, and instruct him to consider himself involved in that work, even as I shall remain busy in Mathura. For the rest of the work, I shall remain telling you as developments will be taking place in due course. You get the whole of Mathura illuminated. There is not much work at Brindavan. The biggest work is at Mathura proper. About Nandagaon etc. carry the memorandum with you, and make a note of whatever instruction may be issued. Altering the course of the river Yamuna may be essential. Near the railway bridge (hidden) geyser originates from the river. When you get one work completed, only then take up another work. Take care of your health. There is no need of finishing all the work in a single day at the cost of strain to the (physical) body. You have plenty of time at your disposal. I shall feel happy when you return getting one or two buildings pulled down. R2 can also partake in this. Just sharpen him a little. If you concentrate on some building for six hours, it cannot remain in tact. You shall get light at each step. Your idea to enter Mathura after finishing work at the suburbs (and surroundings) is right.”

Revered Master’s dictation addressed to M1: “I have just now awakened dear Ram Chandra’s point of the anal plexus (Muladhara chakra), which is the spot of miraculous powers. It has nothing to do with spirituality. I had left it out for emergency, but this point was reverberating in his thought for several days and he knew that it was not in an awakened condition in him. He was weighing it from a spiritual point of view and was desirous of knowing to what destination it was connected. (Generally) there is no need at all to awaken it. The plexus of the thousand petals (Sahasradal Kamal) has opened and come to its real state. This point is in the head and is connected to the anal plexus. Sushumna (midway nerve) goes from the anal plexus through the spine up towards the head. I have set it straight. Now both ways are clear. He (Ram Chandra) can give training according to his choice (through the Hatha Yogic way of nerve cleaning etc. or pure Raja Yogic meditational way, progressing through the organic, cosmic, paracosmic regions,

etc.). For this people have devoted austere practices for many years without achieving the desired purpose. This knot is not loosened by a (competent) guide in any case (almost); and I instruct you (Ram Chandra) also not to do this. Dear M1, everyone transmits from (various) points, but to dear Ram Chandra I have given expertness to achieve the desired result through gesture of any part of the body, i.e. he can transmit from any hair root on the body, apart from the (traditional) chakras to have the same effect that may be there in case of transmission from (fixed) points. The reason of this is that he has become the source (of transmission) from head to foot, and his heart has spread to every artery and vein (as well as nerves). This is something very special, present in him. If he makes a gesture with a finger, the flow of transmission shall start. How much to say (in praise of him)! As there is a purpose in revealing his states, I just say something. It is for the coming (generations) to take him as ideal and be proud of him.”

The dictation, addressed as usual, continued: “Shankaracharya has sown such thorns whose shape has now acquired the hardness of spears. Just he is the person to have spoiled the caste of the priests. He laid the foundation of grossness. Idol worship flourished most in his (Shankarachary) period; and he adopted it from Buddhists. He made every possible effort for the uplift of one particular castes (Brahmins) among Hindus. The result was that they developed the (mis) conception of their own piousness; and wise people started regarding them as fools. They established the supposition of their piousness in their mind to the extent of seeing everyone as low (and degraded). Habitual pursuance of this presumption resulted in their minds getting solidified; and the substance that clears the way to approach God became ineffective. What complaint you assert against the Ghous (of Najda), when many fold sin was present in a person of your own community. He established the priests (from among Brahmins) at such posts as may provide for the worship of their bellies without (any hard) labour, and he brought down their importance in the minds of other people. The so-called Vedic incantation that your

priest recited (like a parrot) developed just in his (Shankaracharya) time or near about. Brahmin born of mouth etc.- an absurdity of such dimensions cannot descend in the Vedas. There was a Vedic aphorism, which has been twisted to be brought about in this way.

“If I am asked to speak the truth, Buddhism was a thousand times better than present-time Hinduism. He (Shankaracharya) has destroyed everything (totally) through introducing novelty. This whole system will require being upturned. Going to Mathura stands postponed for the time being. The reason for this is that the field for work could not be prepared. The work concerning the Jamae Mosque will remain assigned to M1 as usual. You shall, however, not be staying at Shahjahanpur for long. R2 and dear Ram Chandra should keep ready to go anytime. Very great importance has been given to this work; and it is the most essential of all sacred duties. For the time being start the work concerning (the destruction of) priests (there); and assign this work to R2, because several important jobs are assigned to dear Ram Chandra and we are faced with dearth of (capable) persons. Some permanent duty, which is comparatively less important, can be assigned to K2. This job, viz. assigning duties to Qutubs (working) under him, is really of R2, Lord Krishna has gone away to survey the situation at Mathura.”

3-11-1944

Revered Master’s dictation: “Just now, I have done something, knowing which will baffle the wisdom of elder sages of high approach, who will apprehend it as impossible. It is a technique that nobody ever applied in the case of one’s disciple. Nor was there capability to do this. It is the last thing. I have brought down the impossible to the realms of the possible. All get one to the Ultimate Being. I made the Ultimate Being with full force oriented to him (Ram Chandra). M1 has also derived benefit. This thing will be hard to describe and listen to. It is a unique method, with which only I am acquainted.

I feel the condition of my heart, and the restlessness causes to it due to dear Ram Chandra's love, even in my (state of) freedom. There will be no example available neither of mine nor of his (love). The felt for work at Mathura has been prepared. The departure (for there) is to be effected tomorrow."

Instruction at 8.00 P.M.: "The field at Mathura is perfectly ready. Now there is no need for any delay. Lord Krishna has Himself given orders for (your) departure (to Mathura) tomorrow; and bestowed His special powers on dear Ram Chandra."

4-11-1944

Journey to Mathura; and some work there in the evening

5-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation: "Every plce at Brindavan will need to be illuminated. Radha Kunda is a (special) spot in Brindavan. You must go there and make it holy. Take help from R2 also in this work."

Dictation from Lord Krishna: "You have stepped at my birth place (yesterday evening). Apart from your Guide, I too have not left anything lacking (in you). Take success to be certain. Today is a day of rest for you. You mind is puzzled due to remaining awake (during the night). Whatever research you undertake and search out holy spots, do therein exactly what your Guide orders. The research concerning the well of Kubja has been done correctly. The gate of the prison during the period of Kamsa was just where

indicated to you.”

Revered Master’s dictation: “There is no estimate of your status. Do not transmit to anybody during this period, unless order so. Remain patient (and tolerant). So long as you have not completed this work, you can not leave this place.”

Regarding the condition that passed at the well of Kubja...

Revered Master’s dictation continued: “When both of you (R2 and Ram Chandra) were squatting at the well of kubja, the condition coming to experience is the effect of that spot; and gives confirmation of the correct discovery of the spot. It was an emotional condition and thoughts all became oriented to a single direction. The heart was overbrimming with love. That place is good for meditational practice. There are many spots like that, about which people have no knowledge as yet. There, at every step, Lord Krishna’s Grace is overflowing. The earth has started emitting It.”

Dictation addressed to R2: “Just now your brother (Ram Chandra) produced such a fine invention as to bring immense joy to me. I could not contain myself and came (almost) running. This invention is like this: If somebody has a special liking for something edible, then its effect, viz. the essence of the liked taste be brought down touching the tongue, so as to be absorbed into the person concerned. Repeating this several times will remove that (liking) from that person. He (Ram Chandra) structured several individuals during this period (in the meantime), but nobody as yet could come up to the level to enable me to relieve dear Ram Chandra of some of those jobs which remain duties for his subordinates. They need dear Ram Chandra in some form or another. The capability has not developed as yet (in subordinates) to catch orders directly through me or dear Ram Chandra in absentia; and start work. I wanted to reserve him free for those jobs that happen to be just for him. I wanted to keep him free for unraveling the knots of this system (Sahaj Marga) and make it easy (and simple). Anyway, what has been possible is

to be treated as a matter of satisfaction (and gratitude).” [See map no. 1, Appendix.]

6-11-1944

Revered Master’s dictation: “There is a place at the backside of the D.D. temple. Start its destruction just now. Lord Krishna has mentioned it as a den. Just pay attention to this place (where you are present now.)”

Dictation from Lord Krishna: “You have discovered the spot correctly. A little ahead of the place where you are sitting just now, at a distance of about eighteen inches towards the west, my umbilical cord was buried. Your Revered Master has provided you with very good guidance; and you are sitting at the right spot.” [See map no. 2. Appendix.]

Revered Master’s dictation: “You made correct research about the place. The point indicated by you with your stick is quite close to where Revered Lord Krishna’s umbilical cord was buried; and a treasure is still lying buried very close to it. If some occasion for discussion comes up, I shall tell you exactly where the treasure lies. In Mathura there are a number of places where treasures are lying buried; and nobody knows about them.”

Dictation addressed to R2: “How much praise be showered on dear Ram Chandra! The work that is difficult for bigger than big ones, is completed by him in minutes. I ordered just now to purify the mount; and if someone observes it attentively, (he shall find) it has got illuminated. Some effect of demoniac nature remains. That too shall get removed. It shall take just a few minutes to finish. (Pause) The atmosphere has started reverberating. This work is completed.

7-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation: "Lord Krishna has already allotted work (to you) concerning the temple of L.B... You should go to every prominent temple here. Go to the bank of the river Yamuna without fail. First read the situation of the temples. I shall give orders later just now you have a heavy working schedule."

Observation concerning the R.J temple: The eastern part, where the (residential) quarters of the priests are situated, was dark. The middle portion, consisting of the temple building, was somewhat desolate. On the north side of the (main) temple, there is a small temple, behind which there is the place for reverently going around Parikrama): The was extremely dark. The western side of the temple, where the tank of the elephant and the crocodile is situated, was quite glamorous. The idols were all without any glamour. [See map no. 3. Appendix.]

Observation concerning the temple of L.B. at Brindavan: The whole temple was full of showering pompousness. Carnal thoughts were prevailing.

Observation concerning the temple of G.K.: It had glamour.

Revered Master's instructions: "The tour (of Brindavan) is over. Leave Brindavan tomorrow. Have observation of two or three temples on the side of Gwalior. It will be good if you touch some plces with your feet. Those places will require to be illuminated. The best place is this, where you are sitting, viz. the temple with curling pillars. There is the temple of G.J. near Kali Daha, where danger to life prevailed. The bones of (murdered) pilgrims re still existing there."

Question: "Do the places, observed, require to be illuminated?"

Answer: "Every nook and corner here will have to be cleaned."

8-11-1944



Revered Master's instructions: "Consider yourself as in charge of all the main temples. Continue filling them with Grace. Try to remove corruption. If there is no success in that, start destruction of those persons (responsible for corruption). The more places you are able to visit (personally) at Brindavan, the better it will be. The earth will also absorb the effect. That part, where the bones of (murdered) pilgrims are still lying, will have to be destroyed. Those (evil persons) who still exist there, have to be made devoid of light, together with that temple. All the area from G.J. temple towards the west along the old Yamuna bank is dilapidated and entirely worth destruction. When you were sitting at the bank of the big current of the river Yamuna, I told you that people had been murdered there."

Dictation from Lord Krishna: "I feel very happy at your work. Some spots still remain, which you have not been able to visit. The entire place needs to be fully filled up., You may do it either strolling about or just staying (at one place)."

Revered Master's appreciation: "Bravo to dear Ram Chandra's courage. Now, the whole of Mathura is in a saintly condition. But alas! There will be extremely few people to see (and appreciate) it!"

Appreciation from the (invisible) sage in charge of the maintenance of the divine order of Nature (Abdal) at Mathura. "Just now you have filled up entire Mathura with Grace. Something like this had happened once more at the time of the centenary of sage Dayananda (founder of Arya Samaj). This condition is beyond anybody's comprehension and imagination."

Revered Master's dictation addressed to R2: "Just now dear Ram Chandra had brought the gross and subtle forms of Lord Krishna to your vision. The reason is clear; see the earlier notes. He (Ram Chandra) is filled up with such powers, as may hardly come even

to the apprehension and imagination of people. He has, however, absorbed and digested it all. To the extent of his control he has obliterated fervor and enthusiasm. If some of it is there, it is just my own. One thing special in his life-story is that whatever powers have been bestowed on him, he has merged all of them. This is something that never came to the lot of anybody as yet. This is something inborn in him, i.e. the substance for grasping is present (in him) at a high level. That substance, I have taken up to the highest extent. May he live long!”

The usual dictation continued: “Kadamba tree was certainly there; and this is the old spot of Kalidaha (deep cavern in the river Yamuna where the great serpent Kali Nag was conquered by Lord Krishna in his child’s play). At the place where you are sitting at the bank of the river Yamuna in Brindavan, the traditional indigenous priests killed a Marwari businessman, who was a very simple person, travelling all alone. It was a conspiracy, hatched by temple-priests. Their destruction is to be effected.”

Abdal of Mathura (invisible sage in charge of the maintenance of the region) intervened: “I have been assigned another duty. I am stopping my work (concerning you).”

Revered Master’s instruction: “Order the Abdal to protect you for three months, wherever you may be. In case of something contrary you tell him that I shall snatch away everything. Removing all obstructions, clear the way upto Shahjahanpur (for him). This (arrangement), however, will be only temporary. Issue the order just now, (while) I am present.

Abdal: “Wait a Bit.”

Revered Master: “I am just rubbing his ears.”

Abdal: “I have committed a blunder. I consulted m own guide, I beg your pardon.”

Revered Master: “The order once issued is irrevocable.: (Abdal was punished this way because he was assigned the duty to protect me and R2 from cholera for two days, which he had forsaken before time.)

Revered Master’s dictation continued: “I have set the Abdal right. If he had faltered even a little, I would have ordered you to snatch away (his spiritual status). The work at Mathura has almost come to completion. Only a little remains.

“The plan of destruction at Brindavan. I shall reveal to your thought. I did not allow you to go to several dangerous places. There is no need of going to Barsana (Radha’s village). All places, however, have got to be illuminated. You just go to the other places that have been indicated. The particular place (concerning S.J. temple) which is in your thought, has to be destroyed. Time allowing, you may just go there. Going to Nandagoan is necessary. Some of the places, about which no one else can conduct research, have been allotted to you. One thing I am telling you as a matter of great secret. When Reverend Lord Krishna disappeared from this world, there was nobody capable of carrying out His orders. Now when the divine current has taken a turn, it is necessary to make a start in that regard. As such you consider yourself as His representative, that approaches the status of His heir apparent under the present circumstances. In another sense, you treat yourself as such; and in this matter you can take light from Him also. Due to my being included, there has been a lot of convenience to you; otherwise it would have been a very tough job facing you. You will receive light at every step; and the (spiritual) genealogical connection of Lord Krishna will commence with you.

“I am very happy with your work and shower affectionate praise on you. Consider yourself as in charge of Mathura. Whoever comes to be with you in this (work) is to become dear to Lord Krishna to the extent of his/her assistance. Concerning the note about changing the course of (the current of) the river Yamuna, I do not hold a

favourable opinion now, because that place has come into the orbit of destruction, and the persons concerned (viz. hotelier priests) are to be devoid of (genealogical) light in their homes. There is no need of illuminating such places. Just avoid these (places). As regards changing the course of Yamuna at Mathura.. you have already done the needful before the commencement of the present conditions.”

9-11-1944

Revered Master’s dictation: “I like you to roam on all places so that in case some work may come to your lot, the particular site (of work) shall be within your sight (while working at it in absentia). You are going to Govardhan (hillock which Lord Krishna is reputed to have used as an umbrella to save the habitat and inhabitants from the wrath of the rain-god). Illuminate the spots there, as needed, after observation. Sinking down of the hillock shall get checked on its own.

“You have committed a mistake in wasting so much time. Roaming about Govardhan is needed. Going to Radha Kunda will consume much time. Time allowing, there is no harm (to visit Radha Kunda): I leave it to your discretion. The place is certainly nice. Wherever you pass along, go on making it full of spiritual effect. The better course will be to climb the hillock and sit somewhere to make it full of effect.

“Order R2 to make Radha Kunda full of effect. The spots seen by you thus far are all artificial. There is no reality in them. The temple of Hardeo is still in a better condition; and the temples you have seen here, are not completely devoid of grandeur. If you desire to see a real place, go about three miles from where you are sitting. There you shall have the view of Nature. That is a holy place; but there is only forest all around. [See map no. 4., Appendix.]

“Just now dear Ram Chandra has done such work., as will have no example. The effect

of this work can never be exhausted. It requires eyes to see. I am pleased with R2 also. Now it is disrespect to tread over this hillock with shoes on. If somebody may observe it attentively, he /she is to find the sight of divine lightning like it occurred to Moses on the mount Tur. Whoever likes to observe the phenomenon of the mount may stroll over this mount Goverdhan. To tell the truth, this hillock is filled up with that electric power, which is to be associated to the Ultimate Being. I am puffed up with joy. This is prophethood that does not fall to everybody's lot."

[Note by R2: Brother Shri Ram Chandra, after transmitting to mount Goverdhan, and charging it with (spiritual) effect, inquired of me about my observation. I told him that a strong current of divine light was coming to respected brother Shri Ram Chandra from an unrevealed source (Ghaib) and was flowing out from him in and over the mount everywhere. Many souls emerging out of the earth were diving in that flooding ocean of (divine) light, in a state of absorbancy and (satiating) peace. On concentrating on any stone or part of mount Goverdhan, there prevailed a kind of trance).

Revered Master's instruction: "Do go to B.J. The unique peculiarities of that place, of which pilgrims continue to be enamoured, shall all come to light (to you). That place is not worth being visited by women folk. There is no harm in visiting with you. I have ordered this under pressure. However, after visiting it, on return from there, you should warn not to go there in any way. You will have to upturn this entire region. Many homes will have to be made devoid of (genealogical) light. That will, of course, take time. You are carrying away a very huge work from here (for you). Distribute it amongst your own ones. Construction work shall remain only with you. That duty cannot be transferred. Leave aside the Yamuna bridge for the time being; it shall be looked into later on. Remind the Abdal of Mathura, by way of precaution, that in case he shirks the duty assigned to him, he will get just what punishment has been decided upon. At Mathura, you had filled up the bank of the river Yamuna with (divine) effect earlier already to a

sufficient extent. Just do not fill it up (more) with (divine) effect, as you have done in case of mount Goverdhan today.”

The order to illuminate Radha Kunda was there. I (Ram Chandra) wanted to get oriented to it. The instruction from Revered Master descended to take work from R2, who got oriented to the work. The place became illuminated. There was instruction to me to wash my feet in it so that the effect of electricity from the extremity be absorbed in the water. There was no need of washing the mouth etc. In accordance with the orders, the Abdal of Mathura was informed, and asked as to why he had stopped the work. He apologized; and started looking after my safety.

10-11-1944

Revered Master’s dictation: “I inspected your work on Goverdhan. You have hypnotized it a great deal; and the place where you sat has also become illuminated. There is a lot of praise (among sages of yore) for the work that you have already completed. Some more work remains. Return (to Shahjahanpur) after finishing it. Have rest for two days. If you had become oriented more than this, people would have started fainting on reaching there. As such, I had stopped you. I can say with (full) authority that this was just your work (alone). If one looks up (with a discerning eye), one will not find this in anybody (anywhere). Each stone has absorbed the effect. There, divine light has found a home. This is to remain a memorial to you.”

Revered Master’s dictation: “pleasantness has started reigning at Mathura. You have performed a number of superb acts here. The bank of the river Yamuna has become very well illuminated. The atmosphere has become purified. Remain filling the earth at Mathura has become purified. Remain filling the earth at Mathura slowly with fragrant

Grace. Postpone the journey (fixed for) tomorrow. Your disposition is not suited to the journey. There is no harm if further postponement for one or two days more be needed. Take care of your (physical) health.”

13-11-1944

Revered Master’s revelation concerning Mahaban: “It is the place where Lord Krishna used to rest with His cowherd playmates and companions. The cows used to form a (circular) ring around them. I presented your work to Lord Krishna. I earned praise.” Lord Krishna’s comment: “Mathura has become illuminated.”

Revered Master’s instruction: “Start for Mahaban tomorrow. You will have to go to many places of pilgrimage; and illuminate places. After this (Mathura etc.) there is a plan for a tour to Naimisharanya (Neemsar). Draw out the entire life from A...,”

An event: This evening somebody transmitted to me (Ram Chandra) for the sake of testing (me). It was a scorched condition. When his trial was over, I started work under orders. I administered a number of rounds to his heart (Qalba) and under orders from Revered Master introduced fire into his heart from the third point of the organic region in the chest (sirra). At last he apologized; and stood with folded hands. At the time of (my) transmission to him I could hear his cries ‘I am dead. I shall die...’ Revered Master’s revelation. “This gentleman is a householder, who has started donning saffron robes (of recluse sanyasins). When he observed the illumination of Mathura, he began to feel itchy; and started transmission for the sake of testing you.”

Thereafter the Abdal of Mathura, who was under orders to safeguard me, asked me for my orders concerning the person, who had indulged in disrespectful behavior. I told him (Abdal) that the person concerned had got his testing completed, and had tendered apology.

14-11-1944

Revered Master's indication at Mahaban: "This is the mound, where Lord Krishna used to sit with the cowherd boys. This mound where Lord Krishna used to sit with the cowherd boys. This mound was much bigger then. The field measuring about six Biswas (about one fifth of an acre) south of the mound at present, was part of it." Dimensions of the locality:

East - road  
South - field  
West - field toward the river Yamuna  
North - field

When I went up on the mound, I had the feeling that Lord Krishna (as a young boy) was (still) sitting on the highest elevation of the mound in the middle, playing on the flute, and the cowherd boys were sitting all around Him. The lower portion was occupied by the cows which happened to be very healthy and robust. The whole perspective here was extremely pleasant; and they (the cows) seemed to enjoy it.

Lord Krishna's dictation: "You have located the spot correctly. This was my daily routine (at the time). I have sat on this mound (like this) for years together."

Our thoughts had all become stationary. Even on trying, there was no flow of thoughts. The middle part (of the mound) which was elevated, carried a great effect.

During the night, while asleep, orders were received to snap off the connections of the disciples of C1. I was busy at the time in some other work, on finishing which I woke up. The order was complied with on the morning of 15<sup>th</sup>. [See map no. 5., Appendix.]



15-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation: "I postponed the journey today as you were indisposed. Moreover, your wife was desirous of going to Nandagaon with you. She was inwardly cooking up thoughts (for going with you). As such, I made you alight from the bus."

16-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation at Nandagaon: "Lord Krishna meant exactly the pond at whose bank you were sitting. This is a very sacred place. It was here that Lord Krishna met Radha Ji for the first time. There is a forest close b where they used to play together.

Lord Krishna's confirmation: "The discovery of the spot is correct. The well at which you are sitting was not there at that time."

Revered Master's dictation continued: "Somebody misguided you. I meant exactly the Kunda (deep pond), from where you have just now returned. Whoever may have indicated the pond used by the washermen: it is nothing more than a mere pond. Do not entertain doubt. You have discovered the place correctly. [See map no. 6 Appendix.]

Revered Master's dictation on the way back from Nandagaon. "You will have to go upto Rameshwaram. Time is taking a turn. This duty is assigned to you. It has to be done during your life-time as well as after that. You have not been kept free from this work. I shall remain helping you as a guide. Whatever changes are to be effected in the world,

shall all be done through you only. No other personality seems apparently equal to it. All the powers of Nature have been placed under your subordination. Details shall follow at the time of the journey.

Fertility of the earth has declined. The pilgrim places have suffered degeneration. The character (of the people) has got deformed. People are becoming slaves to sensuality. Pride about a birth in a high caste is increasing. Sympathy is evaporating (like camphor). Selfishness is flourishing. Fraud and hypocrisy have found a home in people's hearts. All the defects, so to say, that have crept in, will have to be removed. You will remain receiving hints in this regard from time to time.

Lord Krishna's dictation: "I am very happy with your work. Now the journey to Mathura has come to an end. Indian civilization started from the Deccan Plateau. This part emerged out of the ocean first. As such, start work just from there."

19-11-1944

[See map no. 7, Appendix]

In this map of the railway bridge over the river Yamuna, the sacred place of Lord Krishna's holy cremation was discovered lying near the third pier from the eastern side (of the bridge), indicated by the sign (P). Passing over the bridge at this point (P) created a uniquely fine state. On descending down the bridge (on the sandy bank of the river Yamuna). I sent one of my relatives to that spot. His condition happened to be such that no amount of his effort was able to cause wavering of his thoughts. This was the condition of a person possessing no knowledge of these matters. I was not allowed to go to that place even barefooted. This was a holy place of such a dimension. The journey to Mathura has ended today.

21-11-1944 (at Shahjahanpur)

Dictation from Revered Master (concerning some letter received from A1): “I had all talks in detail with Revered Master; and I placed all events before Him. I am helpless due to (my own) courtesy, and elderliness (of A1); but this is not to last long in me. His (A1) connection (i.e. the system) has got shattered off; but he is not aware of it.”

22-11-1944

Revered Master’s dictation, directed to M1: “Dear Ram Chandra performed such prominent actions at Mathura as were impossible for anybody else. Our respected elder (A1) of B... has no comprehension as yet about what roses have come to bloom. If I allow dear Ram Chandra, he can snatch off his (A1) spiritual state in one second. I have to quote: ‘elderliness is counted by intelligence and not by years’ (Persian saying). During my life-time, I had been treating him (A1) as my elder due to his being a disciple of my Grand Master. Taking care of him was assigned to me, but I never let it be known. In the same vein, now taking care of him (A1) has been assigned to dear Ram Chandra by Revered Master. Just this consideration that I had formed about him during my life-time, served as a safety valve to him. I am just tolerating; but there is a limit to everything. One more opportunity is being allowed to him to mend. Heaven has already slipped away from his hands: the thought of its (so-called) pleasures still persists (in him). That too is to end some time, after all. I had a very detailed discussion with Revered Master about him (A1). It was decided in the end to leave him to His (Revered Grand Master) mercy and benigance. His condition has very much deteriorated. It seems very difficult for him to come to his senses.

“A great mistake is prevailing, viz. considering it below dignity to take a lesson from someone younger (in age than oneself). There is no consideration of age in spirituality. It

is a kind of zeal that can conflagrate in anybody it chooses, at any time; and it mostly depends on (accumulated) impressions and love. He (A1) has (no doubt) studied lots of stories of Gulistan (famous book of Sheikh Saadi in Persian); and gained much experience.

“Dear Ram Chandra has distributed work very correctly: I am repeating it. Dear R2 has prepared the maps of G.J. temple. The residents (of that place) have perpetrated many tyrannies and cruelties on pilgrims there. Destruction of all of them shall remain allotted to R2 in addition to other duties. The red mosque is also included in the work assigned to him. To M1, the work of the two mosques is assigned, in addition to other duties. There is no need for destruction of the D.J. temple. The work about that, whatever it is, shall be looked after, when I issue orders. Destruction of the priestly class, which includes Mathura also, shall be done by R2. If I shall need to make haste in this work, I shall include Dear Ram Chandra also. Exclude P2 from destruction. Dear Ram Chandra shall confine himself to a constructive programme concerning Mathura. He is already burdened with two jobs of huge dimensions, which includes the reconstruction concerning Hinduism as a whole. I am making him tour from place to place just for the completion of this very work. He has to engage himself in a very big work. As such I am assigning miscellaneous work to you (M1 and R2). Good times are approaching quickly, and to shorten the time (of its arrival) is in dear Ram Chandra’s hands.

“After going from here, I presented all facts concerning the letter (of A1) to my Revered Master. He ordered the complete snatching away of the spiritual state of A1 immediately. I have kept (implementation of the order) in abeyance for the time being.”

Revered Master’s instructions: “Upturn the genealogical seat of the Shankaracharya. Start this work just today. Sanyasins have suffered degeneration (of character). Only imposterity remains. Their brains are in high tide just on account of donning saffron garbs. They do not treat human beings as human posing themselves as God-shaped, and

considering all wealth as theirs.”

Lord Krishna’s remark: “I had been to Sharadapeeth (seat of the Shankaracharya in Gujarat). That genealogical seat is worth being upturned.”

24-11-1944

Revered Master’s dictation: “It has become a matter of (necessary) duty for you to go to Rameshwaram and wherever else I indicate; and you have made up your mind accordingly as well. This shall yield very good results some time; and you will find this work even easier, after your life-time. I do have consideration for your health; but am helpless in this matter. The order of Nature, which you have come to fulfil, shall have to be done. I shall not leave you alone even for a single minute; and as such it may be possible that I may have to reduce my attendance here. No doubt, I shall remain taking care of the home and children. Now I am telling about some precautions concerning your health. If at some time you feel very tired due to some journey and find a decrement in energy, you immediately open the particles of the body and merge them in cosmic energy. This will not require being done for more than one or two minutes. If there is any mistake in (applying) the method, I shall tell you. In case, God forbid, some disease occurs, I shall provide treatment at once. Keep water ready. Apart from that, I am indicating what you can do yourself.

“If some trouble may develop in the digestive system or diarrhea may start, God forbid, then, having (firm) imagination of the sun, even when you are in the shade, draw red light (electricity) into your digestive system and this practice can be performed upto five minutes. Practising it for more than that will bring the experience of warmth. If, God forbid, the trouble concerning coughing and catarrh be aroused, then draw in bluish (violet) rays of the sun into your chest; and this practice can be adopted upto ten minutes. If much tiredness is felt in the body, then in the first place I shall myself remove

it; but in case you like to remove it yourself, then the technique for that will be to have the (firm) idea that a very soft (fragrant) shower from the cosmic region is falling on every particle of the body and freshness is increasing. If there is need for walking (a long distance), then you have the (firm) idea that the earth is moving backward and your steps are going ahead. This will shorten the distance. The higher the condition to which you have climbed to have this firm thought, the quicker the distance will get covered. These are miraculous achievements (siddhis), and are generally prohibited for common instruction. There is one more technique for walking (long distances), just for you, which I shall tell you at the proper time. For you there is one more method, but it is only for you (to apply). Whatever power you may have to use, just call for the help of the god in charge of that power. The work concerned shall be done by the god, whose duty it happens to be... This prescription is easy.

There can be several definitions of spirituality; and people have given its various definitions at different stages. Everyone has constructed its definition in accordance with one's own condition; but it is that simple path, which having been traversed, all the dust and din, thorns and thistles leave the mind alone; and thoughts take such a turn as to become (firmly) settled so as to be aware of nothing at all. Nothing, not even a subtle point, remains in view: There is neither self-awareness, nor any concern about family, nor even a longing for the Ultimate Being. This is something superb, which is available very rarely in the real sense. This alone is real spirituality, on arriving at which the entire army of the five-fold sensuality gets merged at its posts; and the person concerned finds his/her condition as that of a corpse. All the wealth remaining there, one does not have awareness of it. In other words, it may be said that he/she becomes as one freshly descended (from eternity) at the beginning of creation.

25-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation: "Now the region for stroll of VI is the cosmic region. Convey congratulations to M1. Elder sages have started work at Rameshwaram. This place is growing so dark that it is essential for some big personality to go there. Dear Ram Chandra will have to go to Dwarika also, as desired by Reverend Lord Krishna. Complete the work of Dwarika during this same journey. Lord Krishna wants to make haste with it. You will need to stay for some time in the dominion of the Nizam (Hyderabad Deccan); and it will be from there that your work for betterment and well-being of India shall start. Just possible you may have to upturn the suzerainty of the Nizam. I shall tell you about this matter at the nick of the moment. If time and circumstances allow, you may return from Dwarika via Sind. There, religious mendicants have created a lot of havoc. Possibly there may be orders for destruction. I permit you to remain established in the state of Prophethood (Nabooat); and take work from the same everywhere during the journey. If per chance there is an opportunity for Satsang, come down (from Prophethood) for that much time. I also permit you to associate with whatever existing spiritual societies or saintly elders you come across or like to meet on your own during the course of the journey, as and when you choose. You have always permission for that. There is no harm in revealing the secret of my succession-representativeship to them if the occasion arises. I can say with full authority that bigger than the big sages will seem like school children to you. Assign to M1 the destruction of the Nawab's agency at Hyderabad, engaged in the conversion of Hindus to Islam."

"I transmitted to dear Ram Chandra for a long time yesterday as well as today. The purpose of the transmission was to pack every particle of his being with the full power of the Ultimate Being (Zaat); and I shall remain doing just this upto the time of his going to Rameshwaram, so that every particle of his being may imbibe the full effect of Zaat before reaching there. All these are, my inventions; and whatever is to come even

beyond these for him, shall also be my invention. I have made possible in the human body, what, upto now, happened to be the fortune available after leaving the physical body.”

Revered Master’s detailed instructions for spiritual training of women followed: “The best method of imparting training to women is in the first place not to have them seated in front of oneself; but adopting a sideways posture when an occasion is there (for transmitting to a woman). Having a curtain will be useful. When the transmission is to be started, have the thought once that God has created Nature as well, and the elements that are present in it (Nature) have got converted to the Ultimate Being. Then transmission be started. Transmission should be very calm, light and fragrant. She should not be kept at the point of the heart for a long period, as in case of a man; but this does not mean that she should not be kept there (at the first point of the spiritual journey) to the extent that it may be needed. As soon as her training may permit, she should be brought without delay to the point of the soul. Sharp transmission should never be given. This should be continually kept in mind, while transmitting to a woman, at whatever stage. They should be imparted lessons for improvement of the household, and for loving their husband, if present. In case of a widow, there should be instruction for developing love for God. If faith is very firm and the trainer is also very strong and of high capacity, she may consider the guide’s soul as God’s body and meditate thereon (which I generally prohibit). Meditation on Master’s form (Shaghal Rabta) should in no case be prescribed. And she should not be at all permitted to adopt it: it should be even prohibited. A wife can adopt this practice in case of having a husband: that is permissible. The spiritual guide should also take precaution that she will not fall madly in love with him. As such their training is very difficult. That is just the reason that Nature has not given them (women) share in these matters beyond what may be necessary. This practice should not be prescribed, except in some very special circumstance, in the case of an unmarried girl. There is no harm in prescribing prayer



and a simple method of worship in their case. To my comprehension, it is better to make unmarried girls worshippers of Lord Krishna; but alongside (such worship) their minds should be made firmly convinced that Lord Krishna is an extremely revered and holy Being, and all that is written in mythological literature about His character and conduct is wholly misconceived and false. There is absolutely no harm in transmitting in absentia. The method prescribed by N1 for transmitting (and imparting training) to women is also correct and better to some extent; but he himself could not observe the precaution; and gave the method of meditation on the form of the guide (Shanghai Rabta) to someone, after all. In case of B1, his mind got deformed after being permitted to impart training. This was not so before that.”

During discussions, there was some reference concerning intuitive capacity. Revered Master intervened: “I am replying to this also. When out of his own experience and due to dear Ram Chandra’s folly, it became evident to N1, that he (Ram Chandra) had nobody equal to him as regards intuitive capacity, he (N1) felt anxious to have it reduced. As such, he (N1) firmly conceived that a heavy, solid stone was set at the end point of his (Ram Chandra) thought process. He (N1) was very often strengthening his conception by repetition; and dear Ram Chandra was also imperiencing that some blockade to his intuitive capacity had been set up. I was continually observing this; and I have shattered that blockade to pieces several times. The purpose of this stone-setting was also to block the onward progress of dear Ram Chandra’s sharp remembrance (Surat). It was just my courage to bring dear Ram Chandra up safely in the face of such a terrible enemy. If he (Ram Chandra) had not acquired a sufficiently fine merging during my life-time, and I had not become pervaded in him through and through, this (saving him) would have appeared impossible. Due to practice, he had a strong thought-force. In our circle, nobody gave importance to love for the Master.”

Further instructions from Revered Master for work ahead; “Take work from the different

powers of Nature. You possess the power also to pull them down, if they work in defiance of your orders; but in such eventuality, you yourself will have to do the work, assigned to them.

The forces of Nature are as following:

- (1) Indra (King of the gods): In charge of the East, Provides vital force to the senses during day (working time).
- (2) Agni (fire): In charge of the South-East. Provides stability to the world. Helps to get food digested.
- (3) Yama (god of death): In charge of the South. Works for destruction.
- (4) Nirriti (Rakshasa or Takshaka): In charge of the South West. (Nairretys). Works to quieten disturbances
- (5) Varuna (god of water): In charge of the West. It is the king of water. Looks after rivers and oceans etc.
- (6) Maruta or Vayu (air): In charge of the North-West. It is the vital force. Provides consciousness.
- (7) Kubera (god of wealth): In charge of the North. It has to manage all the affairs concerning prosperity and wealth.
- (8) Lasha (Divine effulgence or glamour. May also be called Shiva): Incharge of the North-East.
- (9) Brahma (creative power): In charge of the upper direction (Akasha).
- (10) Ananta or Shesha (thousand-hooded viper): In charge of the nether direction (Pataala).
- (11) Aditya or Surya (sun): Provides light and heat. Creates colours.
- (12) Chandrama or Nishapati (moon or the master or husband of the night): Bestow the attributes. Increase coolness. Provides cupidity or erotic force to the senses during the night.

Submission by M1: “Mahabharat mention the prohibition of honey.”

Lord Krishna's clarification: "Honey has been prohibited by Jaina sages, as it contains even blood of many bees. In fact honey stands second only to nectar (with regard to its usefulness for human health). Mahabharat is the story of the bloodshed of thousands (and more) in the interest of truth (Sat), and the good (of humanity). There is no harm in a few bees getting killed for the good of a man."

26-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation: "Inform H3 that he has suffered much deception from people B1 etc.) till now. B1 has now got his approach reduced only upto the cosmic region. But in order to establish his supremacy, transmissions have been administered to him (H3) that required not an ordinary force to set it right. Just now I have put him (H3) at the point of the heart, after snatching off all those deformities that were stuffed into him. The merit of this, he can inquire of dear Ram Chandra or M1 in confidence. H3 has prayed a lot to me to bring him as quickly as possible to somebody who is connected inwardly (genealogically) to me only. I granted the prayer; and also replied once very clearly. I submit him today to that person, in comparison to whom bigger than big sages will appear like school children only. If he (H3) does not turn away from the commands of that person. I promise to bring him up to perfection. B1 and others have been a lot under the spell of deception till now concerning successor-representativeship. Time is coming when this thing also will become known; and I can tell him (B1) also, in case he comes to me once again and promises not to reveal this secret to anybody so long as I do not give an order for it. If he reveals it (without my permission), I shall order some special person to capture his soul. The test for (recognizing) my successor-representative, that may be within H3's capacity, remain of little account. I am throwing a challenge to the whole world; however much people may give free ropes to their minds, their thought can reach only upto the first rung (of the ladder) of my successor-representative) now, thirteen years after my physical veiling! The reply is that it was opportune to conceal it

at that time. It was a matter of danger to his (Ram Chandra) life; and even now if it (fact of Ram Chandra being my successor-representative) comes to be known to those few people (N1 etc.), they will try to have him removed from the world. It is of course another matter that they do not get success (in their designs). They wanted to administer poison to him on just a little apprehension; but I did not let this thought take a firm ground in the heart of that depraved fellow (M3). It was on account of this precaution that I have been keeping the whole thing concealed up till now. Whoever loves him (my successor-representative) shall be just soaked in my love, because he (Ram Chandra) has merged ever particle of his being in me, and I have merged in him with full force.”

Later, Revered Master’s very strict instructions descended: “Now I have no tolerance. Start destruction of A1. The lamp of his genealogical light should get extinguished. I assign this work to all three of you (Ram Chandra, M1 and R2). You distribute the work among yourselves like this: M1 should make him (A1) entirely gross, leaving no capability for thinking in his brain; R2 should draw out life from all persons associated to him, including himself (A1) as well; and you ascend to Prophethood and from there start destruction. He has started a very terrible practice (Amal). All three of you should together protect your family and children wherever they may be. I am just now going to M..., and shall go to Kh... also, where you (Ram Chandra) daughters are stationed (A1 had started the practice of evil mergence).”

Further dictation from Revered Master, after some time: “I have completed the preparations concerning the journey to Rameswaram (and work there), hinted at yesterday (and the day before). Since brokers for the sale of bullock were there for talks with dear Ram Chandra, cleaning has remained to be completed, which I shall do tomorrow. The power of the Ultimate Being will be found in perfect form in every particle of his (Ram Chandra) being. Try to start by about 10<sup>th</sup> of December or one or two days later. There (at Rameshwaram) the mendicants have started certain mischief’s,

that have made it necessary to bring destruction on them. Just now, on the face of it, I have considered destruction to be the best way, but you start this work on reaching the exact place in accordance with my orders. The Nizam's state will have to be upturned. This has been decided upon. Here (at Dwarika) I find very strange matters. The priestly people have created peculiar forms of impostery. Pilgrim's pockets are picked quite abundantly. This holy place has been rendered very impure. Adultery is also going on profusely. Destruction of all this will have to be effected."

Still later, Revered Master instructed: "I have pulled up M5 from the cosmic to the para cosmic region and from there to the region of humility, but: 'What benefit can someone, devoid of good fortune, derive from a perfect guide! After all, Khizra brings Alexander thirsty-lipped from the pool of nectar!!' (Persian couplet). [Reference is to a popular anecdote in Persian literature that the angel of guidance to those who lose their way, named Khizra, took Alexander, the Greek conqueror to the pool of nectar in the ocean. On seeing maimed insects and animals pining for death in the pool, but unable to die having stipped the nectar, Alexander refused to drink nectar and become immortal]

He (M5) talked to you in such an unsettled evasive tone that I regretted having transmitted to him. It is not clear as to what was his fate that I did so much for him. No more further than this: I had the intention of giving him the status of fixed pole-star (Qutub). No secrets are to be revealed to him."

27-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation: "I brought H3 out of the organic region yesterday. Today now, his area of stroll is cosmic region. May God grant him more success. This is the preparation for the journey."

At two minutes past seven in the evening Revered Master pointed out: “All those who have received initiation from A1, to whatever community they may belong, are disconnected just now: with the exception of B1, destruction shall be dealt to all. In case S8 fails to come up to the right path, snatch off all on November 29.”

Later Revered Master revealed: “Now at 9 P.M. the region of stroll for H3 is the para cosmic region.”

28-11-1944

Revered Master’s dictation: “M5 has been administered such transmission just now as was not possible to be bestowed by anybody (else). The organic, cosmic and para cosmic regions have attained a sufficient degree of bloom. Now he is fit for permission (to impart training to others) but helpless....

“A meditational practice will be very beneficial to R2. He is to lie on a cot or something else, on hi sback, and ramian lying there fore some time with full awareness, but without any movement. Then he is to have the firm supposition that all the spiritual points brought to awakening by his guide upto that time. Usually flourishing and his guide’s power is penetrating all (those points and spots). Doing this practice, when the state of balance is developed, he is to get stationed in that (same thought and remain lying, just the same. This will prove to be very beneficial. M1 does not need it. K2 can be given this meditation for practice.

“Break off the connections of all those who are initiated through N1. (Order was complied with: time 11.44 A.M.).The connection of B1to A1 has already been snapped off yesternight. The connection of A1 also has been shattered just now (11.49 A.M.) by my Revered Master. Snatch off (the spiritual state of) A2. (Order complied with). Copies of all letters received here from A1 and sent to him from here, be prepared and dispatched to B1. I have decided that M5 be restrained fully through M1, from having

any connection with C1. He (M5) be shown C1's letter to dear Ram Chandra, and be told as to how far he (C1) was within his rights to write like that, and I have, as such, disconnected him (C1) totally (from my discipleship). M1 should complete this job by the evening today. And report to me, when I am here in the evening. When I have not spared A1, what was C1 after all!"

Further dictation from Revered Master, on M5 having given up his connection to C1: "I feel happy at the refined obedience (and faith) of M5. One thing more: if evident to him through his experience, he may give up; and then see my munificence." [Reference is to his wavering concerning successor-representativeship,]

Dictation from Lord Krishna at 7.45 P.M.: "My Chakra (boomerang) has now started its circular movement. A1's courage is at test now. God knows what comprehension he has formed. Consider me alone as caretaker of these orphans (Ram Chandra. M1 & R2) now. I have no regard for A1's power even as equivalent to a particle of dust. He has no capacity to cause even a little harm to anyone of you (three). All connections have got snapped off; and he (A1) is a target of (divine) wrath. He is not in possession of any power now, which might have been able to protect him. I need to tell you one very essential thing; move out of the home as soon as possible, and go to Rameshwaram. The reality of that place, I shall tell you when you have reached there. Rest assured that your Master does not leave you alone at any time; and consider the same to be the case with me. The time has taken a turn now after five thousand years; and the plan of the arena of war known as Mahabharat is still in my view. The downfall of the Hindus started just after that great war. Now the time is close for progress in the direction of their old status; and it is entirely within your control to bring that time back as early as you like, for which God's orders have already been issued. Your Master had told you quite correctly that your work (as Master) shall start from the Deccan Plateau. You will illuminate every place, and destruction shall also be there side by side. I shall remain telling you everything from time to time. Nizam's kingdom cannot last anymore now. He has sucked the blood of Hindus behind the veil; and there is an agency that is working to serve his

ends. The chastity of many ladies has also been violated. In the course of this journey you will require to stay at Bombay, reaching there through Poona. Just possible, some political work there be allotted. Thereafter, going to Dwarika is necessary. You will need to go to Sarhind also. Work shall be coming your way, during the journey and on occasions. One thing needs to be kept into special consideration: during the journey or at some place of stay: you should not turn your eye (of wrath) on anybody. Since you will be in the state of Prophethood, your anger will not be tolerable either to your Master or to me. If per chance, you find some companion for the journey, his duty will be to try to keep you cool. Nobody will have the power to face you. Your necessary work here, is to be assigned to your spiritual brother, who may be most superior and who may have the (requisite) permission to take up such jobs. So long as the journey continues, your single-pointed attention should remain oriented only to those jobs, for which you are being sent (on journey). I have experienced your caliber at Mathura. The event of Goverdhan is in my view. You had the intention to make the whole of Mathura just like that. Due to the habitation however, that was not proper. Your capacity to form an estimate has been shattered by your Master. As such, you need continuous guidance in such work. The (holy) spots discovered by you at Mathura are beyond anybody's capacity to be known without your guidance (and reference). As such, after this big tour, you may try to reveal those spots, in so far as it may be possible. If you try to reveal it yourself (on your own accord without dependence on help from anybody else), the money required for this purpose is present at Mathura itself, and can be made available to you. Be oriented now and then to Brindavan to effect more purity therein. Now I do not like the continuation of the G.J. temple in any way; and you start destruction in accordance with the plan brought to your vision by your guide. Extinguish the genealogical light of those, who have indulged in such acts and whose life-stories are in your hands. There is no need of changing the course of the river Yamuna near the spot close to the Kadamba tree, known to you. Ominousness is reigning there. There are a few danger to life. All of those (places) will be included in the destruction. If you stand



at the north-eastern corner of the G.J. temple, there will emerge a kind of triangle, all of which will be included in the destruction. You illuminated the bank of the river Yamuna quite well. The effect of the demon on the mound close to your father-in-law's place has now been completely removed. The fragrance of spirituality has started pervading the atmosphere there; but occasional attention to it will be needed to establish it there. You have seen that place of my first meeting with Radha at Nandagaon. The same well is the place, where you were sitting. The place of my cremation mentioned in the scriptures is entirely wrong. These last rites were actually performed close to the third pier of the railway bridge from the eastern side, as indicated by you correctly in the map prepared by you. When (my father) Basudeoji took me to Gokula during the dead of the night, he had passed about one furlong ahead of this spot. Gokula is not far off from Mathura. If you happen to go to Mathura again some time, I shall tell you the point also, where Basudeoji had crossed the river with me."

29-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation: "I have got every particle of his (Ram Chandra) being illuminated; and in every particle (of his being), the full force of the Ultimate Being is present. Convey congratulations to M1 that I have perfected his disciple M8 today, and also accorded permission (to transmit and impart training). He may be assigned the work of touring the villages; and it may be noted in the notebook that I accorded permission to him through my successor-representative Babu Ram Chandra today; and his (M8) guide

M1 verified it. M1 should take work from him.

“Since I am perfectly attached to dear Ram Chandra, and he is temperamentally very sharp, I remain exercising control in the matter of transmission. Now he has come to the right course in the regard; but quickness in thought still persists. That is the reason why I am bringing his desires to fruition, which are coming up in quick succession. The result, as such, of his quick temperament, is the creation of Qutub, Qutub-Ul-Agtaab and Ghous. In one or two case I had to be hasty. The resonance of whatever thought occurs to him takes place in the Ultimate Being. As such, I have no other choice than to act in accordance with the same (resonance). That has been his practice from the very beginning up till now. He has been very quick in his own case as well; and wants to do likewise in case of others. He had no power to quickly remove the habit formed over such a long stretch of time. Now he (Ram Chandra) has expressed his acceptance (of God’s will). I have corrected it to the extent that I considered it needful; and shall make it more exact.”

1-12-1944

Dictation from Reverend Radhaji: “My first meeting with Lord Krishna took place exactly at the spot that you have discovered, viz. at the place of the well (that was not there then, in the ancient time). I had heard of the qualities of Lord Krishna’ and the (electric) current of His Love had started running (in me) before the meeting. As soon as we met, His darkish figure descended straight into my heart (and took possession of it). I started meditating on Him. I was not away from that meditation at any time during twenty four hours. My condition was that due to my mind’s absorption in His thought, I remained totally oblivious of every other (routine) activity. This was only to begin with. Gradually, matters came to such a pass that I had no liking for any worldly activity; and the mind had become concentrated on the single point of His Being. This conception remained continuously fixed as a result of which I visualized Lord Krishna alone

everywhere. Every particle of my body appeared to contain an image (of Krishna). Thereafter it came to pass that I considered my own self as Krishna; and in effect Lord Krishna started comprehending Himself as Radha. If you like to introduce this system (of spiritual practice you are to establish), the method which I had adopted can be the only key. The only difference is to be that I had loved with the idea of having Him as a husband. The method is the same: love can be changed to any concept of one's liking. In this regard I shall be telling you that as and whenever you will like to enquire, Lord Krishna has permitted me to come to you. I am telling you one thing more for your convenience; my method was (very much) akin to yours. You looked upon your Master with the sentiment of yourself being a lover and taking Him to be in the role of the beloved.”

Revered Master's dictation: “For anybody desirous of high (spiritual) progress, there can be no method other than what has been indicated by Reverend Radha Ji; and it is just through this essential condition that anyone has ever earned progress in our fold. This includes my own example as well. Introduce just this (into your new system) . First of all people should develop their own sentiment for their Master. By sentiment I mean that disciples should establish such relationship (with their Master) as may develop love in them. Then they may start following (their Master). The best relationship can be just what you have established with me. It, however, depends on one's inclination of temperament towards the other (viz. Master) Reverend Radha Ji had taken up just this relationship in another form. I am also an example of it. There should, however, be no emphasis on his relationship for everybody. Just possible there may not be an inclination to it in case of somebody. Just possible there may not be an inclination to it in case of somebody; and this prescription may not be useful in that case. This is the job of a person of a great heart. It is not to be shared by all and sundry. Only rare ones will adopt it. This may be emphasized in the spiritual get-together (Satsang). The form to be adopted can be anything.”

[Note: Shri Ram Chandra Ji (Babu Ji) loved His Master taking Him as beloved; and

exactly this sentiment had been adopted by Revered Lalaji Saheb towards His own Revered Master. The results are just there. M1 had taken up the sentiment for father.]

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I am very happy to observe dear Ram Chandra. I appreciate his Master; and assure that the world has not seen such Samartha Guru as yet. My way of love was such as to have all currents combined together and get located in the Being of my Master. No other picture except He would come to my view. Every atom appeared to enshrine the Master. Now the question arises, how I came up to it. The answer to this happens to be, that on arriving to Him and on turning to faith from atheism, I had come to trust that there was no other being at that time except. He to be my succorer. I, however, certainly had a little tendency to quarrel with my Master to some extent. I firmly fixed my Master’s form in my heart and remained attentive to it. When this condition advanced further and Master’s form started disappearing from the heart, then I started meditating on the Master’s form (supposing it) outside myself. When the condition advanced still further and Master’s form disappeared altogether (not coming up in thought at all in any way), then I started meditating with the supposition of my own form as that of the Master. By and by it came to pass that I began seeing His form alone in all particles that existed. I had loved Him only as Master, taking no other relationship as a sentiment. However, I had taken Him as the object of love. Whenever my eye moved, it fell on Him alone. In other words, I had become His lover; and He had come to be my object of love, which naturally served the same purpose that your Master has just hinted at. I do not like to utter that word: Sanskrit language is prohibitive of it. That alone is the way to advancement. I am going now. I shall remain coming (off and on).”

Revered Master’s dictation: “What I was evading could not be avoided. There is a compulsion as the Providential command is just this. Swami Vivekananda directly offered permission in His system to dear Ram Chandra. However, when he (Ram Chandra) made reference of it to me and did not accept it (permission) on his own, Swami Vivekananda urged me. As such, I am bestowing permission in the system (of

spirituality) descending from Paramahansa Ram Krishna Ji. Now that system shall also be related to him (Ram Chandra). Swami Vivekananda has just mentioned this to His Master, who has approved and accepted it.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Defects (and degeneration) have started creeping into my system. Spirituality is evaporating; and people are getting oriented to education alone. They are busy, mastering spirituality just through this. Spiritual life is dwindling day by day. There seems nobody as yet, who may be able to set this (deterioration) right. As such, I like you to bear this burden yourself. You have put a question to me. I shall reply to it, after consulting my Master.”

In accordance with orders from Revered Master, permission in the order of Paramahansa Ram Krishna Ji was conferred on M1 at 1.10 P.M. in the presence of R2.

Dictation from Paramhansa Ram Krishna Ji: “The condition of my system has changed completely. Spirituality is disappearing; and the purpose is dying. As such. You go to Calcutta, and announce to them (by way of declaration) that you (Ram Chandra) have got permission in that system. Whoever likes it, if endowed with vision, may examine the veracity of this declaration. You (also) conduct group meditation (and hold a spiritual get-together) there. If you like, you can initiate (people) in this (my) system. I have obtained permission from your Master. When you start working, I shall remain giving instructions.”

Revered Master’s instruction: “M1 can give permission from this system, to whomever he maylike.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “On observing this system (of Revered Lalaji Saheb), I found a very peculiar defect, viz whomsoever (belonging to this system) I happened to see, I found downcast and withered, so to say. Some have developed a habit from which they do not like to get away. This (tendency) should be removed. This Marga (system) has this very great defect. This casts effect on others; and covers

spirituality, which is bliss through and through, with a light veil. The stronger the personality of someone, the greater the influence cast on other by that person. (Pause). You shall have to go to Calcutta. I leave it to your Master to send you (there) at the time of His choice. I, no doubt, like it to be soon.”

Revered Master’s dictation: “When this matter (of downcast and withered condition of people of my system) was mentioned to me. I felt a sort of shame. As such, it is to be removed through transmission. I shall not send you to Calcutta during this tour (of South India and Dwarika).”

2-12-1944

Revered Master’s dictation: “Local administration is under the charge of Abdal. The status of incarnation (Avatar) is a bit higher than that. When I went from here to the Higher World, Swami Vivekananda very much emphasized that His work also be assigned to dear Ram Chandra.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda: “I do not find at present anybody better than you, to run my Mission. Inform the president (f my Mission in Calcutta) that I and my Master have assigned this work of the Mission to you; and that whatever difficulties and hindrances may be developing therein, be referred to you for being resolved by you. Whatever tests for examining (the veracity of this assignment) may be there, can be applied.”

A draft letter addressed to the president, of the Shri Ram Krishna Mission, in Calcutta was dictated by Swami Vivekananda; and ordered to be dispatched to him.

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji (at 5.20 P.M.): “I have been searching all along for someone capable of carrying on the work of my Mission, but could not find a man like you... I, therefore, entrusted to you the duty, that I have been conducting so far. I have obtained your Master’s permission.”

Dictation from Kabir Saheb (at 9.00 P.M.): “The work of my system is in bad shape. People are going on doing things in a ritualistic way (beating the track traversed by a snake). Reality has got lost: It has been turned into the form of songs. Filthy abuses have been composed in my name; and are being sung in open market places.

My purpose was pure spirituality: and my genealogical connection was with the Ultimate Being. I think the degeneration that has crept into my system is not to find its parallel anywhere (else). Try to improve it. It needs much labor. I shall be happy if you succeed (in your efforts in this direction).”

Revered Master’s dictation: “Kabir Saheb gave permission in his system to him (Ram Chandra); but since he remains looking always for me for it, I bestow permission for (work in) that system also. I too had this permission (conferred on me during my life-time.)”

Revered Kabir Saheb’s dictation: “You will have to go to Kashi and meet the people of the order there to try to bring them to the right path. The difficulty, however, is that they are all uncivil (and crude) through and through.”

3-12-1944

Swami Vivekananda finalized the draft of the letter for dispatch to the president of the Shri Ram Krishna Mission in Calcutta, and instructed: “If a reply is received when you are away from home, M1 will inform the president that his revered brother is on his way to cape Comorin via Madras; and will return after performing the sacred duties assigned to him by his own Master.”

4-12-1944

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda: “I have been to my Mission centres, spread all over

India, and studied the situation. The glimps of spirituality is getting diminished throughout. This is the information, given to you for keeping yourself upto the mark. The rest (of the instructions) will come when you will take up the work in your hand.

“When you go to Madras, have a glimpse of my Mission-people Better, stay there (at the Ram Krishna Mission campus in Madras). I shall be with you there. Write a letter to Madras informing them Swami Vivekananda Ji dictated a letter and instructed that it was to be dispatched to the person in charge of the Madras centre of the Ram Krishna Mission, together with a copy of the letter sent to Calcutta earlier. He further desired that on leaving Madras for a further tour, I would better carry a letter from the head of the Madras centre to the head of the centre of the Ram Krishna Mission at the next place to be visited, and so on.

Swami Ji dictated further: “You are making a landmark in the spiritual world. This is all due to your worthy Master. The world has never seen a man like Him; and so is the case with you. I congratulate you and pray that your sacred tasks be fulfilled by the Almighty. I shall be with you all along, during your journey; and shall be readily available to you whenever needed, at your beck and call. Make a bid and see the result. Get a copy of what I have dictated so far., compiled; and keep it with you all along during your journey. My dictation will go side by side with that of your Revered Master...”

Revered Master granted permission to M1 for training in the system founded by Kabir at 5.30 P.M. today. The work concerning Kabir Pantha was allotted to him (M1) together with the knowledge that instructions will be coming to him directly through Ram Chandra.

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Look here, Ram Chandra, you will change the face of the world. The power bestowed upon me by my Guru, I have transferred to you altogether in a state of trance at this very time, when your Master was sitting before you. My Mission cannot stand without you and your supreme Guide. Think of me as your lover. All the blessings of my Guru will be pouring on you at times. Rest assured, I



prophesy, that freedom will reign over India in the near future. The field has been prepared for your work, in the realm of spirituality. The various powers of Nature have been informed. (Pause) Sum up these things in a book. (Pause) I have been in the Deccan Plateau; and watched the situation myself, (Pause) Here is my Master before you, giving blessings to you and praying for your success during the journey.. (Pause) Look here, Christ is before you, giving you blessings.”

Revered Master’s dictation: “The usual method of dear Ram Chandra has consisted in arousing an aspirant’s own power at a particular point, instead of stuffing him up (from outside). This method reaches upto the aspirant’s state of attainment (through his own effort); and is the best method. There can be not technique better than this for the (real) benefit to the practicant (Abhayasi).”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I have issued orders to the people of my Mission. The difficulty is, however, that they mostly could not catch (the orders). Proceed, and have experience. Look here, Lord Krishna is sitting before you, and telling something, which your Master has ordered not to be committed to writing.”

Paramahimsa Ram Krishna Ji remarked: “I had structured Narendra Babu (Swami Vivekananda); and your Guru has structured you.”

Revered Master Dictation: “I do not like to reveal to anybody, what Reverend Lord Krishna said just now, and Swami Vivekananda Ji had told earlier. That shall remain confidential; and shall remain just with you. Never transmit to anybody from the state. I have bestowed such power to dear Ram Chandra as to reconstruct the entire face of the world in a week’s time. He can do so even in one minute; but in the case of such hurry, people will not survive.”

Message of sage Agastya: “I have prepared the field for you (to work) in the South (of India). Start as early as possible. Have consideration concerning Nizam (ruler of Hyderabad).”

5-12-1944

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I have obtained your Master’s permission that from this date (today) you will work for me. I give you the authority that had been bestowed upon me by my Guru. Remember well that now you will work in my place. Any change in the system of y Mission, introduced by you, shall be welcome (to me). So far I have been conducting the work myself. You will now be held responsible for it. Mandates will now come to you directly. Show this (dictate) to people of my Mission. I am very thankful to your Guru to have given me a man like you. Best wishes. I am going now, and shall come again at your call. You will enjoy the same authority.”

Revered Swami Ji returned to convey further: “I had forgotten to tell you one thing. You will dominate throughout the length and breadth of India. The turn of the world shall come thereafter. That is all. Best wishes to your brother M1.”

Revered Master informed: “Swami Vivekananda Ji has appointed you as his successor-representative.”

Dictation from Sami Vivekananda Ji later: “The condition of your assembly (Satsang) is also in a ruinous state. Those who took up the charge willfully, lacked in duty for the earthly paradise. Destruction has been ordered, which you people have to implement. I am working side by side with your respect Guru. ‘Measure for measure’, is my order. Fools are scattered all around in our Satsang. They have but one idea in their view, viz. to dominate. Your organization, to be set up, will be divided into suitable circles, with you at the head of the organization as a whole. One man will be responsible for each circle, when the time comes (to reorganize the Satsang anew). I have merged in you top to toe, with full powers.ou digested the whole thing in such a short time.”

Revered Master’s dictation: “It is a matter of great happiness that today Swami Vivekananda Ji ha structured dear Ram Chandra like himself, i.e. the entire power

(belonging to Swami Ji) has got merged in dear Ram Chandra. Now this colour will also pervade our system.”

Further dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “An idea just flashed to me. The report of today be sent to the president of my Mission in Calcutta, giving reference to the letter sent earlier. He should be requested to view the matter with his own eyes, if he has the capacity to do so. He should connect his heart with your heart. Write also that this may be done before 10-12-1944, as the person concerned is leaving for Madras. Drop this letter today.

“I have been at Madras just now. The missionary is carrying an air of earthly paradise in his mind. Spirituality has been turned to materiality. You will find its apex upon him. Photograph is the only object of worship (to him). Photograph are garlanded. Heaps of books are recited everywhere. This is the information I give you Break these things altogether. My school of philosophy is akin to that of your Master.

“Do not bother yourself with money. It is in store for you. What you do is better service of humanity. Do not consider yourself to be weak. My words are Godly.”

6-12-1944

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda: “Do not be disappointed. I have prepared a sufficient filed for your work. Your supreme Guide is with me; and we are working together, moving on to achieve the object.

“There are a few persons belonging to my Mission here as well. Train them in the line of your Master’s system. Rest assured that success will attend on you. One thing more is there to remember: every stage of life, a man should adhere strictly to the principles of his Master. Success will dawn decidedly. You have not come for the work adopted, because you are something else than what people think of you. I have sworn to remain

with you throughout your life, just like your Master does. Consider me as one of His disciples. I am measuring the coast of Madras, at this very time. Your Guru has allowed you to be at Madras for three days. The work is sacred. I shall take permission from your Guru to have a little more time; but this will be decided there, when you actually reach the spot. I like to have my disciples trained in the line of your Master's system and method. You are at liberty to initiate them either on the hand of your Guru or on mine. The idea of having reference of Lord Krishna, that you were just talking about, is correct. All will be merged in One alone, with your Guru at the head. 'Better one's own duty though destitute of merit': these are the words of Lord Krishna. Prepare a gist of your journey. Give up your shilly shally habits. Try to get up before sunrise. If you do not give up these habits, you are dealing mischief to human beings and to the persons coming after you. There is work, work and work before you. This is the only thing that pleases me and your Guru. When you go to Madras or somewhere else, set some time for the disciples of my Guru to have a sitting daily all the fixed time, apart from that which they devote to their usual puja. It will be your duty to concentrate yourself on them at the time fixed by you 9.00 P.M. is the time fixed by your Guru on your suggestion. I welcome this idea. Teach this method to them. There is a vast difference between theory and practice; let them come up to the latter.

“The house of the journey too should be spent in work. You have a great task before you. You must fulfil it in your life-time. You will be getting directions for work at every hour during your journey. Divide any work, coming to you, in appropriate circles, keeping yourself at the head (in each cas

7-12-1944

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Assign some work of my Mission to M1. He is

also permitted to work. Do not think yourself to be alone. I will be with you all along through the journey. Take a good diet, rather a rich diet. I prefer eggs, preferably roasted eggs, with tea for you.

“It is current amongst sanyasins (ascetics) of these days to give some name (called Yugpat) to their disciples. Let me call you ‘Juliet’ now. This is the translation of your condition!”

“Today VI has been granted permission (for training others) in the new system of Sahaj Marga by M1, authenticated by brother Ram Chandra Ji Saheb. [Signatures of M1 and Shri Babuji affixed.]

Revered Master’s dictation: “Swami Vivekananda has assigned responsibility just now to dear Ram Chandra to check the epidemic of depression. I transfer the responsibility for this to M1 also, as he too has permission in that system (of the Ram Krishna Mission). There should be special care in this respect with regard to one’s own disciples and brethren.

Further dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I have made the arrangement needed for you. Abolish slavishness from your brain; and adopt the right course. I had been all over India these days. Your presence is needed everywhere. After completing your present tour (of South India and Dwarika), you should visit Calcutta. The turn of Lahore will come afterwards. Illuminate the places, wherever you go.”

8-12-1944

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Juliet was the beloved of Romeo (in Shakespeare’s drama). I mean, she was the object of his love, and so you are for me. There are very many kinds of work before you. Have patience. Your field of work is are wider than what anybody would ever have dreamt of. You have come for this very purpose.

“Be happy that our Guru is showering benedictions on you for your success and happy return.”

9-12-1944

Instructions from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “When you reach Madras, ask the man in charge of my Mission there to arrange for a guide on the course of our intended journey. Rest assured, success will attend on you. There is a renowned sage there (in South India). He will not come to see you. Orient yourself towards him, to give him spiritual benefit. All along your journey, I and your supreme Guide will be with you. There is nothing to fear on the way. Everything will go on well. You will conquer all. Give up your idea for (a visit to) Ceylon.”

10-12-1944

Revered Master’s dictation: “People are waiting. Orders have been issued. Do not start (on journey) tomorrow. If I find the field all clear, I shall give permission. Just possible, you may have to start on Tuesday (12-12). All depends on (suitability of) time. Sage Agastya has given a promise for your safety; and has also prepared the field (for your work). Swami Vivekananda has issued orders to the Qutub of Madras to look after your security. Sure, you committed a little mistake in asking him (Qutub) to consider his duty started when you set your foot on the railway platform of Madras. You should have

made him take charge of your security earlier.”

Revered Master resumed dictation, when during discussion with M1, I hinted that earlier I was able to comprehend immediately what an elder in absentia, oriented to me, was telling (or asking) me “Dear Ram Chandra has climbed up so high and has merged himself in such a way that the current of their (elder’s) thought is not able to send a jerk upto that height. When he is stationed a little lower, he is able to comprehend (alright). In fact, the rule is that one should always keep oneself stationed at a lower level (for the sake of efficiency in working). I do not compel him (to station himself at a lower level); and he also is aware that I am present to instruct him as and when needed. M1 should better practice this technique of stationing oneself at a level lower than one’s actual status. The method of keeping the heart in one’s view, as adopted by him (Ram Chandra), is a good practice. Just now, I am at leisure. He has invented a technique, which is best; and there can be no other method superior to it. Earlier he had invented the method for practice at 9.00 P.M., reference to which is there in the notes. That remains essential. I shall mention the method, now invented, to Swami Vivekananda Ji as well. This (newly invented) method brings benefit together to both guru and disciple. This method ordains that in case an aspirant is told to meditate on the form of the Master in the heart, he is to be instructed to have the thought that the elder whose form is being taken to meditate on, is connected to the Ultimate Being. Meditation should be started just with this firm supposition. If this thought is brought once to mind, before starting meditation on the form of Master (Shaghal Rabta) and getting absorbed in the practice, that will be still better. In case of the aspirant having been told to meditate on the idea of light, he should be instructed to have the idea that the light taken up for firm supposition, is the light of the Ultimate Being. All these inventions should be written down in the notebook.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I have got acquainted with your inventions; and have leapt up out of joy. I can dare say that such an inventive mind has never been born in India, among sages. This is all due to your supreme Guide. It will not be out of place

if I call you 'wisdom personified'. I again say that such a person has never been born. A great mischief has been done to you: your will has been weakened."

11-12-1944

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: "We have together settled about your departure on tour. The way is clear now. Chaitanya Mahaprabhu is waiting for you, giving you benedictions."

Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu remarked: "My expectations, like those of your Master, remain connected with you."

Revered Master's dictation: "Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu has bestowed his successor-representativeship to you; and I have accepted it. He is desiring you to go to Orissa."

Dictation from Shri Chaitanya: "I shall also remain visiting you like your Guru; and shall be helpful to you. My system has suffered immense deterioration. I surrender it to you."

Swami Vivekananda Ji remarked, "Look here, Ram Chandra. Your responsibility is very great now – sway over India. Leave the service (in Shahjahanpur-court). You have no time to devote to any work, other than the spiritual. You have sufficient resources to pull on (the household.)"

Revered Master's dictation: "So much of work is pouring on you, that I do not know how it shall all be possible to tackle. The condition of your health is such as to need continuous attendance of a physician. However, there is no choice in the face of a divine command. All this is being ordained by the Ultimate Being; and everybody else is helpless in this regard."

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: "You will find speakers-extempore; piles of



books by the side' a stream of people at the platform; almirahs with glass-doors; book-worms – but nothing of a spiritual nature. Our principles have been forgotten. Spirituality gave way to materialism; and there are all sorts of difficulties which you will know when you go there. Either I will have to finish these things, or else people come to spirituality. These things mean: the people themselves as well as their decorator materials. If you do not succeed in my Mission or if people do not listen to you. I will have to abide by orders.

“There must remain one and only one religion on the face of the earth-that will be that of your Master. The fibres of your being have been made strong by your supreme Guide. Nothing more remains to be made. You have a double force in you. Powers are increasing day by day. There are some other Maha-Purushas (Great Souls) waiting for you, who wish to assign work to you. Christ is restless and requires your help. Guru Nanak is waiting. The responsibility of all these systems of spirituality lies upon your shoulders. You cannot unyoke yourself. The rest we shall see.

“The word is moving towards resurrection. We have our common goal. You will build temples upon the heaps of bones of the persons going down. That is the order of God directly to us, for the fulfillment of which we have structured you. Churches will be razed to ruins but in the long run; and who knows, it may happen after your physical dissolution as well. There will be but one religion based on spirituality alone. The superfluous things will wither away. Your Guru will be worshipped throughout the world – all over the globe; and you will be the architect. The world will be different from the present one, in the long run. Peace based on spirituality alone will reign supreme. Countries will be absorbed into one unit; but that time is far off and not approaching fast.

“Spirituality is not in a man's clothing, but in the person who wears it. This principle has been forgotten. Search is attempted where there is nothing but garments: man is judged by his clothes. Immorality travels on: most of the Western people have fallen prey to it.

Indians copy those who know nothing. Quotations are given from their philosophy. Customs are followed; manners imitated. Things are going to change so fast that man's wisdom can hardly comprehend it. All that prevails will disappear so soon that one can hardly dream of it. Change and change alone is in the offing; it depends on you alone. Do your duty. We are the helpers (in the process of change). I am putting all these facts before you to give you hints for guidance. Work and work, and nothing else. Follow your Master's mandates."

Revered Master's dictation: "I have decided about his (Ram Chandra) departure on tour. I was of the opinion that he starts tomorrow (Wednesday) or on Thursday: I had left the choice between these two days to him. His inclination was in favour of Thursday. As such, Swami Vivekananda Ji arrived and fixed Thursday. Now there can be no postponement anymore. When he reaches Mathura on Friday, he may leave (for South India) on Saturday, in case rest be needed, or else (preferably) he should leave Mathura on Friday. This much I have left to his liking. Arrangements on trains have been made. There will be a vacant space (on trains) on both days, so that he finds a seat. In case M1's heart suggests some necessary change (concerning these arrangements), it should be given due consideration."

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji continued: "There is a vast difference between the people of the East and the West. The two civilizations differ widely. Their civilization sprang up in the 18<sup>th</sup> century, when we people were involved with mutual bickering. They took advantage of our simplicity. The very idea to make us addicted to an easy-going life came across the minds of the traders from the West. Glittering objects and ladies (society girls) started pouring in to provide us with curiosity and motivation to copy the western ways. The state changed so much in India, that we all came to the level of the Occident. All these things are to disappear now.

The world is changing to supremacy; but you have not begun this work yet. It depends upon you and you alone."

13-12-1944

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji (in continuation of the subject from 11-12): “You have a lot of work before you. Throw away the rest to the dogs. You have to build up a brighter world.

“Here is Lord Krishna’s opinion about you: “His (Ram Chandra) Guru Mahatma Ram Chandra Ji of Fatehgarh, has made him worthy of being followed or copied by the world. His biography will be written in letters of gold. His love for him is more than what anybody would have for one’s disciple. That is the reason for his speedy progress. There is no limit to his progress, but will is wanting in him.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji dictated further to complete the subject started on 11-12: “I will be the person to guide you in this regard. Be firm as a rock. Iron will is required in you. Do not allow any idea of weakness to come to you. It will be very shameful for such a man as you to entertain any idea of weakness, which is nowhere really present in you. We all give you power at every moment. You are absorbed in your Master; and He is merged in you. He is absorbed in love so much that He considers Himself as His disciple (you). I have not found this example anywhere in my life-time. This love comes next to that of Radha. It is strange to have the idea of weakness even then persisting. You have set an example to follow on. No power in the world can match you. Whichever liberated soul (Mukta Atma) comes to you, becomes your lover. I am telling you the truth that, leaving apart my Guru, I have not loved anyone except you. The same is the case with my Guru, the Revered One, of course leaving me apart. At all hours, I think of you and you alone.”

Revered Master's remark: "The dictations of Sami Vivekananda Ji are all as precious as mine."

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: "I had structured Mool Shankar (Swami Dayananda Ji) for the work concerning Bharat Varsha (India); but his life did not last adequately long. The work remained half done. My line of work was different. I was enamored of yogic practices; and traversed the stages of spirituality through the same path. This method (of transmission) is different. This also serves the same purpose. As such, proceed on together with it. Now the health of people has not remained capable of taking up yogi practices. I had administered an oath to Swami Dayananda to have the respect of the priestly class (Brahmins) obliterated from Bharat Varsha. They (Brahmins) had caused lots of worries to me; and it is just they who have obstructed reform of the Hindu community. As such, I had ordered like that (to Swami Dayananda Ji). So long as these people remain saddled in their position (of supremacy), progress is difficult. I am now surrendering my work to you. I want that you may also take that oath, so that Bharat Varsha may attain to the regeneration (of its dignity). I am going now; and shall remain coming when the need will be there."

Swami Vivekananda Ji instructed: "Look here, Ram Chandra, the eyes of Swami Vrijananda (Guru of Swami Dayaanda Ji) are fixed on you. Realize your responsibility and put yourself to work. The world is changing now. I will give you whatever I have, according to your need. Your will has been strengthened. Now be ready and proceed on the journey. Do not delay."

Revered Master's dictation: "As regards the letter of A3, I had ordained (people of Fatehgarh) to accept what may come from Shahjahanpur. There was a need to say this. Voices have surely reached their ears. These people who are now helping (them, will not remain usefully together (with them) in the long run. Finally you alone will have to do the needful. What they desire cannot be possible. She (Revered Master's wife) has not recognized your value. It is no doubt praise worthy that her affection for everybody is

more or less equal. Women, however, are generally devoid of (a kind of) discretion. They like outwardly expressed praise and sycophancy. That is why they are amenable to such tricks by anybody. There is no need of obeying her, if that would cause the weakening of my purpose. I am referring to the declaration at the annual function. The declaration must have to be made, whatever consequences that may have.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Stages do nothing at the time of death. Moderation is required; and that is lacking everywhere. Spirituality alone can do nothing. It must go side by side with morality. I describe your (Ram Chandra) character now. Since the very moment that you went to your Guru, you thought of Him as the Master of the Universe. You took Him to be everything to you. Your Guru has described you sufficiently well in the notes. That remains exactly as it is. Moreover, you set an example to the world in so far as every particle of your being got absorbed in your Master; and to complete the process very every particle of His Being merged with you. Such an example of perfect absorption or merging with each other will hardly be found anywhere else. If I describe your expansion, you have pervaded every particle of the atmosphere. You are in everything. M1 has love for you; and you should be thankful to him.”

14-12-1944 (Started on tour)

Today Shriman Ram Chandra Ji of Shahjahanpur started for South India (note b M1)

17-12-1944

Arrived at Madras. Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji on the way to Madras (in the train): “Work to illumine the Deccan Plateau and then Southern India beginning from

Dharakhoh (railway station) wherefrom a chain of tunnels starts. When you reach Madras, illuminate the place and give the spiritual touch to the public in general, leaving the priestly people apart. Repeat the process at the places to which you move on. I and your Master have made you're the Master of the Universe. The world will remember you ever after. Realize your responsibility and feel that you are the same (Master of the Universe). Your words will not go waste. Have proper care and due regard to utter words. You enjoy spiritual sovereignty.”

18-12-1944 (Arrived at Madras)

When I reached the Ram Krishna Mission Ashram at Madras, I was told that the president was in meditation; and several guests were already there at the time. I was asked to come in the morning (to meet their president). I felt a few jerks in the earth at the premises of the Mission; and moved on to find an accommodation at a Dharma Shala (a philanthropic guest-house for pilgrim at all places in India).

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I have felt deeply touched at this discourtesy. The person in charge of the ashram is unable to receive my direct dictates. I am busy all along. You just proceed on with your work.”

Revered Master's dictation: “You have completed work here. Go to Rameshwaram tomorrow. Your being merged with the Ultimate Being has caused harm to me, as I could not do anything (on my own).”

Swami Vivekananda Ji remarked: “We are one and the same in this condition.”

21-12-1944

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I swear by what is holy to me that I can never neglect you.”

The fixed polestar (Qutub) of Madras informed on my stepping out of the limits of that territory, that his circle of operation was left behind; and his duty was over.

22-12-1944

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Your work has been praiseworthy throughout. Our hopes are with you.”

Revered Master’s dictation: “You have to do a lot of work here (Rameshwaram). Illuminate the entire temple. It was my order to wash your feet in Shiva Kunda (pool), so that the electricity of your feet may pervade the water of that pool. You have to illuminate every nook and corner here, so that the pilgrims may derive benefit. Start the destruction of the host-priests (Pandas). Take the one you met first, to begin with. There is no need to go to Dhanush Koti. All other places will have to be visited. You have remained awake throughout the night. As such, take rest. The work at Madras has been good. Your idea is correct that spiritual training (in the real sense) cannot start there. This part will come up right last of all. The servant, you found, is alright. There is no need to be apprehensive. Precaution, however, is necessary.”

Dictation from Lord Krishna: “I bless you that your home be never devoid of spirituality. You did very good work, wherever you went. Just now you have performed such work

in the Rameshwaram temple, as no power on earth could be able to do in this way. Your name shall remain ever alive. That is my blessing. On whomsoever you cast your glance in the real way, he shall be alchemized. I am very happy that you did not care for money in the face of my command. Do invite me whenever a need may arise. Your Revered Master is all the time with you. No incarnation or Prophet (without body) can work so long as He does not structure His instrument. Swami Vivekananda also has sworn to remain with you. Treat both (Revered Lalaji Saheb and Swami Vivekananda Ji) as one and the same.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I have resolved to merge all the spiritual societies, as early as possible, with the same one, to which you belong. Mine will also go with you. All will glimmer like the morning stars. But wait for orders: It is something not to be done so soon. Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu is disgusted with his line of disciples. I am also an example of the same plight. Kabirism is getting dwindles to nothing.

“Have company of good persons; and work independently. I do not want any middle man. Do what you say and say what you do. Never mind whether success comes to you or not in the first step. Go on doing (your allotted job) till the goal is reached. Look here, the breeding ground of your thoughts are our hearts: You can commit no wrong. Your aims are high, I know; but how to achieve them is left for you and you alone: we are only the helps. You ought to stand on your own legs, and on your own base. Look here again. God’s blessings will be pouring on you at every stage of your life; and every fibre of your Being has been brought up in the same way. Be always firm on what you hold as something good.”

23-12-1944

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “If you need somebody for your security, call the



sage (Qutub) of Ceylon to look after you as long as you are here in Rameshwaram, as it lies in his region. (Pause) It is not at all necessary as we are looking after you. However, as you are their (all Qutubs) Master, you can call him to this duty, if you like.”

The temple at Rameshwaram was in a mournful attire, like when some (ominous) death would have occurred there. Lakshmi Kund (pool), Sita Kund, Ram Kund etc. were all illuminated.

In Rameshwaram I was putting up in the philanthropic guest-house for pilgrims named after Bhagwandas Bagla. Due to having a large amount of cash money with me, I had orders to sleep inside the small cabin allotted to me there. I could not sleep there due to mosquitoes. I somehow spent last night (inside the cabin). In a helpless state, I obtained permission (from Revered Master) to sleep in the verandah. At that time the sage of Ceylon informed me that under orders he had started looking after my security so long as I was in Rameshwaram.

24-12-1944

Remark of Swami Vivekananda Ji: “You have invested the Rameshwaram temple with power that will not be exhausted for a hundred years.”

Instructions from Lord Krishna (when sought for): “Every nook and corner of Rameshwaram has become illuminated. Filling it any more will cause people to be upset there. Now there is no need for you to stay here. The work is completed. The sage of Ceylon is inviting you. Take up Ceylon tomorrow (from Rameshwaram); and depart from here the day after.”

25-12-1944

Instructions from Lord Krishna: “You are going to Madurai. There also the work is just for you to do. You will illuminate the place together with the destruction of the priestly class. There have been so many of my devotees; but nobody could do this work. It was kept reserved for you. There is no need of being attentive to Ceylon anymore just now.”

Revered Master’s dictation (4.15 P.M.): “You brought havoc to Ceylon. If I had not arrived at the nick of the moment, many people would have become bereft of their lives. You turned the entire force of the Ultimate Being over Ceylon. Withdraw some of it. The minds of people have suffered suspension (of normal activity). Be a bit quick (to withdraw the surplus force).” [The order was complied with immediately.]

“Now do not be oriented to Ceylon at all. Depart from here tomorrow.”

The sage of Ceylon communicated: “The condition that is prevailing in Sri Lanka at this time is something to be pined for by people. Everybody (here at this time) is in a state of saintly mendicancy, and the mental condition is in a state of suspension. Whomever you see, seems like a statue. Thoughts are totally stationary. Congratulation. I offer thanks to that Master, who structured you like this. Such a big personality never came to my view (Pause) I am an old man. I pray that you turn up the times; and this can be possible only for you. I wish that you upturn some part of Sri Lanka. This is the part known as C.. Many pilgrims come here and indulge in immortal practices. Else, if you endow me with the power (adequate for the purpose), I myself may do the job. I offer thanks again to your Revered Master; and am getting yoked to my duty. I am very happy to have this duty assigned to me; and it was my good fortune to get the opportunity to serve you: you had almost bypassed me.”

Revered Master’s dictation: “He is very great sage, who has no equal in Ceylon. He is asking to get C.. upturned; but there is no command from God as yet (for that).”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Your work in Ceylon has been exemplary. You

have beaten (all) world record. What you could do in two minutes in Ceylon, may require a hundred years for others. All the people there, without even a single exception, are in a state spiritual trance.”

27-12-1944

Instructions from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Illuminate the city (Madurai) totally; and proceed on with the destruction of the priestly class. Leave Madurai for Trivandrum tomorrow morning. You will reach there directly without needing change of train. There (at Trivandrum) you will get the bus for Cape Comorin (Kanya Kumari). I shall tell you there the shortest route to Mysore. The journey to Ernakulam is very tedious; and there is nothing to see (or do). You have conquered my heart; and it is with profound love that I give place to you there (in my heart). Look here, you will always be happy; that is my prayer for you. Is there anything that you require?”

Submission: “If there is more work, it be assigned to me.”

Answer: “ We have been asking you for compliance all along. Of course there is enough for you to do.”

Revered Master’s dictation: There is a lot of praise for me among elder sages; and everybody’s eyes are getting fixed on you. This (auspicious) time will also be remembered by people after you. The Divine Grace shall pour even more on you after completion of this work; and that is to be reward for this work. Some elders are of the

opinion to call you back to their abode (in the Brighter World), after getting the jobs here completed quickly through you; but I am not of this opinion, and neither shall I let this be done.”

Remark from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “You have finished the work assigned to you (here at Madurai) through a new discovery at this very time. Nothing more remains to be done here.”

Revered Master’s instruction: “Write this discovery in the notebook on reaching Shahjahanpur.” Method (used at Madurai): I spread myself in the subtle form throughout Madurai and having filled all sides with power, got it permeated into the earth and (its) atoms.

29-12-1944

Instructions from Swami Vivekananda Ji (at Trivandrum): “Cut short your journey as pain starts. Go to Mysore (Hassan and Belur, if you so desire), after completing your trip to the southern-most point of India (Cape Comorin). Then proceed to Hyderabad. Leave Poona.”

Revered Master’s detailed instructions: “Go to Cape Comorin tomorrow; and illuminate it very well, but not like Ceylon. On return, stay for one day here (at Trivandrum). Then start for Mysore with the morning train. There is no need for staying at Bangalore. You can see some places like Belur there. Go to Hyderabad, thereafter. Work will be (waiting) just there. From there go to Bombay, visiting Daulatabad and Ajanta (on the way). I shall tell you whatever period of stay will be required there. There is no need for going to Poona. From Bombay, go to Dwarka. The work at Trivandrum too has remained fine. You have remained sufficiently oriented to Trivandrum: now there seems to be no need (anymore). Have a very light thought, (however). The temple of Padmanabha Swami has got very well illuminated. Tonight, be oriented only to the destruction of the priestly

class, that has brought about the total annihilation of the Hindus. There is a need for very unrelenting destruction.”

31-12-1944

Revered Master’s dictation: “You went to Cape Comorin yesterday (30-12-1944). You completed the work on the way. The whole atmosphere has undergone change. Start from here tomorrow morning. There is no need to stay in Travancore State (now named Kerala) any further.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “You have renounced everything of this transitory world for your Lord; and He has done the same for you. You have got that power (of real renunciation) developed in you, in an exemplary way. Having regard for this fact, you should pass a life worth living for a king. If you live a king-like life, it will add pleasure to mine and your Guru’s hearts. The time is approaching fast to tread along the foot-prints of your Master, the supreme Lord. The idea of Sanyasa (way of the ascetic recluse) will disappear in the course of time. That is why we want you to lead that kind of life, which is to set an example for others. Be happy.”

Revered Master explained: “Swami Vivekananda Ji meant to say that you should live a life of a king like Janak.” [Reference here is to king Janak of Mithila, father of Sita of the epic Ramayana, who is reputed to have led the life of a perfect recluse, even though a householder and king.]

3-1-1945

Revered Master remarked: “I ordered you to stay for one day here (at Bangalore) because you were tired and unable to continue the journey further (at a continuous stretch). Otherwise I was not in favour of your stay here.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “You have prepared the field for others to work on. Nobody else could have done so. Start for Mysore tonight. When you go back to Shahjahanpur, prepare some graduates to work in Mysore state (now Karnatak). You have rightly come to comprehend that there is a vast field for spiritual work in Mysore (Karnatak). You will find a number of persons in Hyderabad also; but it will require time to mould their destiny to engage in this Godly duty. It is you who will prepare them for the task ahead. Prepare the field for others to follow on. Your one duty is common everywhere, viz., destruction of the priestly class.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Meet a few of the prominent persons of this city (Mysore) if you like. I do not mean to compel you for this. I have only permitted you, as it was your desire. Select good people to work in the field. Education is necessary. A very big personality is to be born of you. It is already in the making; and days are near (for your work on the same).

7-1-1945

Revered Master’s instruction: “You are now going to Hassan. Make the Belur temple full of effect. Your work has been very good: Mysore has got very well illuminated. Start from here tomorrow.”

10-1-1945

Arrived at Hyderabad (Deccan) today.

11-1-1945

Revered Master intimated: “Today at 11.30 P.M. a very special power has been conferred on you by Nature for being utilized in the work here. I have now transferred it to you. This power is bestowed to prophets. It has never been conferred on any devotee to date.”

14-1-1945

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Congratulations. Your work has been excellent throughout. You have filled the air with rebellion; and Nizam’s dominion will end (in due course). It is bound to take place. Do not be disheartened. Your generation will reap the fruits of your labour, put in so far; and will be remembered ever after as long as the world exists. You have illuminated every part of the country in Southern India. Now comes the turn of Northern India, for which you must proceed to Delhi (to start with), after completing the present tour of South India and Dwarika (Gujarat). Do not despair or be afraid of time. It comes on sooner or later. By later I mean, after your physical dissolution; and the effect will last ever after until time collapses by the Will of God Almighty. Your existence is the golden opportunity for your country and the world. You will absorb at large every religion of the world, and issue forth a new one.

“Proceed on to Ajanta as you desire to see it. Then go to Bombay and Dwarika. Lord Krishna will be waiting for you in Dwarika to give you some sacred work.”

19-1-1945

There were orders to illuminate Bombay from Manmad.

21-1-1945

There were orders to start illuminating Gujarat as the Surat railway station was passed.

23-1-1945

Dictation from Lord Krishna: “Illuminate Dwarika. This is the place where I have resided (during a long period of my life on earth). This is the same sacred soil. Some parts of it

have been engulfed by the sea. That was in keeping with my own orders. Go to Okha fort; and illuminate that part. If you are not able to go there, illuminate it just from here. It is better to go there in all respects. People here are amply selfish. Lack of love is prevailing. That is the condition more or less almost everywhere. Everybody seems entangled in the net of worldliness (Maya).”

Revered Master’s You go home after completing the work here. You can stay at Mathura for a day or two. Do not take your wife (with you) to Shahjanapur yet. This prohibition is to extend upto the time of the annual function (Bhandara). If she comes (to Shahjahanpur) of her own accord, that does not matter; but with a view to certain reasons I do not consider it proper just now. Your going to Okha is essential.”

24-1-1945

Revered Master’s instruction: “The temple has been amply illuminated. Now get oriented to the town.”

26-1-1945

Instructions from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “There is no need for staying here any more. Start from here tomorrow.”

27-1-1945

Left Dwarika. Before arriving at the railway station, orders were received to take the whole of Southern India, that has got illuminated fully, for transmitting to in a single piece.

28-1-1945

At Mehsana, orders were received for the destruction of two groups of people of Rajputana (now called Rajasthan).

29-1-1945



Arrived at Mathura.

31-1-1945

Dictation from Lord Krishna (at Mathura): “The whole of Southern

India has got illuminated. Dwarika has also got illuminated. Now turn your face to the Northern part of India. This work will begin from Delhi. Times are changing; and it needs to change quickly. The delay in the change of times is only to the extent of hesitation in your efforts (to effect the change). This work has been wholly assigned to you by Nature. Go on working in accordance with the instructions of your Guide. After illuminating Northern India, take the whole of India to be transmitted to in a single piece. Thereafter more work will be assigned, for which hints have already arrived to you. I am very happy with our work.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji remarked: “Look here, these are the words of Lord Krishna. You have to stick to work and work alone.”

2-2-1945

Revered Master’s dictation (at Shahjanapur): “I shall be very happy if you people may be able to do the work that I could not do Organization is essential for every spiritual institution. In my time the thoughts of all people had got focused on me. Training they might be receiving from anybody, but they had regard and consideration for me. This same method may be taken up, viz. The currents of thought of all people be merged into some person, whom they consider great or whom God may have made great. This can also be possible, that the special persons, that have been structured recently, and whom I consider as my own, may draw the people attached to them individually towards themselves, and then establish their connection with the one whom they consider (and find) great. I do not mean to say that they get rid of their disciples or people connected

to them, and the responsibility about them be assigned to the particular person (considered and found to be great). I mean only that they should be made to have the firm belief that orders are descending through the person who is their Master's successor-representative; and to follow such orders is incumbent on them as their duty. That is to say, the particular person be taken to be my representative.

“Those who set up an organization should first of all practice to structure themselves as the model after which they like to mould others. For example someone is habituated to eating sweets, and likes to make others abstain from eating sweets. It is necessary for such a person to first give up eating sweets and then motivate others to follow suit. This has been my practice throughout my life, that I first practiced myself what I liked to make others practice. Keeping this principle into view, you people proceed on to set up the organization. One thing is worth remembrance, viz. any defect remaining in overt or covert form in the trainer, will go a long way, and will penetrate quickly in the practitant who adopts the practice of meditation on the form of his/her guide. That is the reason why the practice of meditation on the form (Shaghal Rabta) should be adopted only on the form of one whose condition should have come to the Balanced State, and who should have largely got rid of the defects prohibited in the spiritual sphere or unbecoming of the state of moral sublimity. I feel that this practice of meditation on the personal form should not be told to every person, who imparts training, unless the guide himself/herself would have reached that state. As such, every trainer should structure himself/herself so as to enable his/her disciples to take up his/her form for the practice of meditation.”

4-2-1945

Revered Master's dictation: “I am coming from Fatehgarh. The old woman (Revered

Lalaji Saheb's widow) has also fallen a victim to greed. Request Swami Vivekananda Ji for advice.”

Dictation from Swamy Vivekananda Ji: “All the elements that come in the way of progress must be annihilated. Look here. The field before you is a very large one, but it has been made narrow by the elements that we do not desire (to retain). From today I will be supporting you in your work. I consider it to be my work and my duty. Your Guru has given me the charge of His work today. He will be the guiding power over us. “Regarding this work, you will receive dictates directly from me; and you will guide your subordinates just as I tell you. Negative ideas should be forgotten altogether. I find a great difficulty in guessing about your brothers, in respect of the high position they enjoy. You should set them right first and then put them to work. Fickle-mindedness is the poison for the way to success. I need firm-minded persons with a strong will for the work.

Revered Master's dictation: “I have handed over the charge of this work (setting the organization right) to Swami Vivekananda Ji. Now he will do whatever is proper. All of you will have to obey his orders. If you people budge even a little from compliance with his orders, my rage will come down in full fury. I am apparently displeased with M1 to a certain extent. He returns to his previous condition and habit. What a great matter of regret it is that a person of such a high standard should fail to make people oriented to him. I had told dear Ram Chandra about this. He did not tell this to him (M1) out of respect and regard for his elderliness. I had to point it out myself now. I shall start getting strict with my own people first of all. He (M1) has left himself so loose that every puff of wind makes him shaky all over. Worries do not dwindle in case of anybody in this transitory world. Only the form (of worries) remains changing. Somebody suffers from one kind, while some other has another form (of worries) in store. Was I (myself) free from them? In spite of the worries, however, which of my duties did I ever shirk? A person of such capability (as of M1) is bound to be drawn away by the force of the habit of his own will, however much he may be cleaned. It is therefore necessary, that he (m1)

should put his own will to work, and desist from yielding place to these (degrading) thoughts. He has to structure himself to the tune of the times. The old tricks are now coming to an end. He (M1) has to do a lot of work; but it is regrettable that his mentality does not get oriented to that, nor does he structure out such means and media as may bring the shape of success into view.

“I am telling an easy principle for his (M1) benefit, which he is to follow at a fixed time daily without fail. That is prayer. His defects that come to his view in the form of thoughts are to be placed before God, with the prayer to be rid of them. The usual practice (Abhyas) is to be carried alongwith. Can fire not be created in sandalwood, which is a cool object? Can dried wood not be straightened through a warming process? He (M1) should structure himself in such a manner as may inspire people to be attracted to him. For the rest, he may consult me anytime, about whatever he likes to know in this regard. I shall reply. I am afraid, this poison may spread among his disciples: I am warning and instructing specially on that account. Mere spirituality does not work; very few persons are capable of comprehending it. It general people discover the inner (capacity) on the basis of outer expression. There should be attractiveness, sublime flexibility and softness in speech. This I am addressing to everybody. If somebody has nothing lacking in him as regards spirituality, but its expression is not upto the mark, I cannot call him perfect. Serving one’s purpose (successfully) is another matter. However, now I am coming to a second (important) point: I am prepared to designate a person as selfish, if he serves his own purpose and does not structure himself capable of structuring others. These words may possibly seem harsh; but these alone contain the best sweetness, if he gets impelled to readiness (through these words). This dictation which I have given for M1 is to be noted down by you (Ram Chandra) also; and it is to be read often and on most occasions so as to keep it fresh (in memory).”

Brief assessment of the tour in South India

Revered Master’s dictation: “Dear Ram Chandra toured Southern India for about one

and a half month. He has performed such prominent jobs there as require eyes to observe. He brought every order issued to him to the level of completion. There was a very special feature of his work, that speaks volumes in praise of his brain: he tied fine knots at appropriate places, to prevent his work being spoilt by somebody (subsequently). Another characteristic (of his work) was that he illumined that land upto several yards below the surface. The method of his working happened to be the best; before arriving at a particular station and some place proper, he would first draw out whatever defects had penetrated the earth there; and better still, he did not allow that defect to pervade the atmosphere (vacuum). The defects that he ejected and culled out were also purified so that the poison did not acquire the character of lethal epidemic. At one place, he no doubt played a little mischief; and that was on arriving at Dwarika. He took out the effect produced by defects there' and instead of purifying, just diverted it westwards. I have designated his action as mischief, but in reality that was exactly my will at that time. (Pause) He has stuffed the temples with such effect as to leave no need for charging them (with spiritual power) for the next one hundred years. Further still, he has filled certain streets and lanes, through which he happened to pass, with such an effect as to have made them suitable places for meditational purpose. Some towns have been illumined in such a way as to leave the effect in every wall and door. He has illumined the particles of the entire atmosphere there; and has introduced suitable checks to prevent defilement of those particles by somebody. Very often, it also happened that whole cities – I mean the people thereof – would have crossed all the stages of spirituality. That, however, was not my intention, as it would have then brought about an end to Nature's work; and difference and discord, which is the very life of Nature, would have vanished. And still, he was feeling afraid all the time, that he may not fall short of completing the fulfillment of some duty, assigned to him. Engaged in such a heavy task, he was yet unsure whether the job-in-hand was completed or not. The reason was that he has rendered himself negative to such an extent that his thought remains short of touching the fringe of the positive. That is just my "During the course of this tour, one

desire did come up in him, on reaching Cape Comorin, viz. to hypnotize some rock there, in such a way as had never occurred before. In accordance with his desire, Swami Vivekananda Ji accorded in permission also and had pointed out a rock, close to his own, for the purpose. However, he desisted from this work, thinking that it would be almost impossible for anybody to recognize the work, and to associate the rock with my name. In some way, it has also been alright, for if he had done something in accordance with his tremendous intention, it would have been possible that the very passage there would have got blocked; and come to be the proverbial limitation of Alexandria.

[Reference here is to the famous city Alexandria in Egypt, which was founded by Alexander the Great. It was a successor to the Athenian culture after Alexander, and the centre of religious, philosophical, social, scientific, commercial and all other activities, which attracted invaders who destroyed one culture and rebuilt another in succession. Thus the very strength of Alexandria proverbially proved to be its weakness and limitation again and again. It had a huge central library which was burnt first in 47 B.C. by the Roman conqueror Julius Caesar. Then a second time it was destroyed again by the Arabs towards the middle of the 7<sup>th</sup> century A.D. Caliph Omar is said to have burnt what was remaining of the central library in 641 A.D.]

There may also be reference to the legends concerning wall of Alexander (Sadd-e-Sikkandari) about which there is much controversy and discussion in Islamic Scripture. It is acknowledged as mysterious; and difficult to determine as to its identity and trace out its origin and location. Limit of Alexandria (Hadd-e-Sikandaria) seems more apt to the context here.

“Finally, I want to say only that he (Ram Chandra) has made my name eternally alive; and his value in the eyes of revered sages has acquired very special dimensions. Just possible, his record has got prepared somewhere else in the institution of the sages of highest. The eye of Lord Krishna on him has acquired a special stance due to this work. It is a matter of greatest pride that during this entire period of his absence, the wheel of

Lord Krishna (Krishna Chakra) remained going round and round over his residence; and Shri Krishna Ji Maharaja kept the security of the place in His own hands. Removing the boy from the railway track was just His work. [This refers to an incident at the railway station Khudaganj, district Farrukhabad, where dear Dinesh Chandra, the second son of Shri Babuji, was sitting on the railway line. He was removed there from once; but he again sat there, whereupon some other boy caught hold of his hand and threw him away, just minutes before a train passed on that track.] Lord Krishna had taken charge of safety just when He had fixed the date of departure for the journey; and the boomerang was activated during absence, which remained active upto 9.30 A.M. on 2<sup>nd</sup> February upto the time of his (Ram Chandra) waking up after sleep. All the work, performed after Rameshwaram, had been done by him (Ram Chandra) in the state of pain (in his stomach.)”

5-2-1945

Revered Master’s dictation: “Together with Swami Vivekananda Ji, I have observed very carefully my whole field (of associates). Most of them have acquired the shape of ripened boils containing pus. Many have turned out to be totally pus personified from head to foot; and have gone against me. That does not mean that they do not accept me as Guru; but they have started depending on others, whose pus has begun to flow into them., There are some who are taking the recurrent pain caused by the reverberation of pus as divine attraction (Jazb). This pusculatationis becoming so deep that it has pervaded every nerve and fibre of many people. To draw out (this pus) is no more a job for an ordinary person; nor is anybody capable of removing it, at this time. It cannot be removed unless people pin their faith on dear Ram Chandra. The nervous system of some of them has got spoilt to such an extent as to leave nothing but smoke and fire of maternity. This condition had some time been cleaned by dear Ram Chandra through my order; but on his becoming slack, again through my order, those people have now started

returning to and have almost arrived back to that (spoilt) condition. The reason is obvious, that they have not given up the company of those persons who are causing harm to them spiritually.”

Revered Master’s dictation continued now addressed to M1: “If this is got translated in accordance with the medical principles, then (it is to be said that) that decomposition has set in, in them. Louis Cohen has designated this decomposed matter as putrefaction. I am calling this condition putrefaction in another sense from the spiritual point of view. If a person of illumined heart sits before those people, he will feel a bad smell emanating from them. Now the cure for this is (the use of) the surgeon’s knife. Just possible, some people may require being operated upon; and some others may quit this system. By system, I mean the present system. Those (earlier) ones have all got already smashed. I have just stated this condition before you people. This is the exact description of their condition, to the extent of the availability of words. Some people are good as well; but the sovereignty of others is impressed deeply on most of them.”

6-2-1945

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I have myself watched the situation and have come to the conclusion that the elements, that are at work causing degeneration, must be removed. The idea is prevalent among your brethren that the work of your Master is to be carried on smoothly by the souls, black as they are, that have no connection now with your Guru, whom I also take as my Lord. This is the exact translation of the ideas prevailing in them as in jackals (who start howling on hearing the howl from anyone of them). These people are howling like that (inconsiderately). The Will of God Almighty is moving towards what we are avoiding for the time being (Pause) I allow you to sit before me just as you do before your Guru.

“There is slackness on the part of M1 in performing divine work. A man of such



standard (or stage) should avoid such things (like slackness). His will has been weakened. Forget it altogether. He should have indomitable courage and an unshakable will. He should know that there is no other man of such a high standard in the world except dear Ram Chandra. He has not come for these things. Throw these to the dogs and keep yourself aloof. My object is that he should lead a life like a recluse (Sanyasin) in the true sense. I call your Guru the incarnation of Love; and He is really so. Dear Ram Chandra has performed his duties, using his will to the fullest extent. He planned the whole programme concerning the duties assigned to him. He has illuminated the whole of Southern India in spite of the pain he was suffering in the course of the journey. He carried out all that was desired from him. He has beaten the world-record. I have praise for his divine wisdom, bestowed by his Guru. In short, no man exists in the world at present, who may be able to compare with him or compete with him in his work. I shall again repeat that this is all due to his worthy Master-our Lord. I prophesy that he will be remembered ever after, among sages in particular.”

7-2-1945

Dictation from Lord Krishna: “About the journey, Mahatma Ram Chandra Ji of Fatehgarh has already said quite a lot; and whatever he has said is correct, word for word. Ram Chandra has astonished the spiritual world. Such a precious person is needed there (in the higher world) also. The world is demanding very quick change. The country should be clear of impious people. Reaching there (higher world), he (Ram Chandra) will be able to complete this work very quickly. The initiative for this (calling Ram Chandra to the higher world) has come directly from the Ultimate Being several times. However, the question remains that the Revered Being (Lalaji Saheb) that has structured him (Ram Chandra), has not yet tasted the fruits of His labour. Keeping this into view, it has been decided to retain him (Ram Chandra) still more here. He has attained extreme

closeness to the Ultimate Being; and has established a very deep relationship with it.”

8-2-1945 (Noon-time)

Revered Master’s dictation: “In case, God forbid, there happens to be lack of success during the Bhandara (annual function), though it should not be so by God’s Grace, I permit you to focus the full Power of Lord Krishna’s boomerang there. There is no need for the least care for destruction falling to the lot of whomsoever it may be; and in that eventuality all of you people from Shahjahanpur should leave that place immediately. I issue one more order; wherever needed you just invite Lord Krishna. I assure you that He cannot bypass what you desire. I and Swami Vivekananda Ji will be present there in full force. If you just submit something to Lord Krishna with a full heart, the whole set-up will be turned upside down. I am telling you one thing more. Your extreme closeness to the Ultimate Being has gone upto the extent that it can also be brought to the whirling condition and the scene of the final doom (annihilation-Pralaya) can be made to prevail. You have no awareness of these powers. The reason is obvious: You have got yourself merged into me so much that no awareness of these things comes up. As such, I want that your temperament may not boil up (in anger) some time, lest the whole set-up may get upset, unless some special order is given. I have got you structured almost like that. I want that nothing more than what be needed may come to be done by you.”

Revered Master’s dictation continued, now addressed to M1: “I have given him (Ram Chandra) that power, that if he comes to the state of sharp anger, he can bring about total annihilation, though that will be against the law of Nature; and this can never happen out of his action, so long as the time is not ripe for that, because his reins are in my hands. If such powers would be stuffed in someone else, he would have boiled up. For him there

was an order from Nature; and he has got structured accordingly. These Powers are not bestowed on anybody. Even successor-representatives are kept devoid of these. The matter of fact, so to say, is that these Powers are not bestowed on anybody. Even successor-representatives are kept devoid of these. The matter of fact, so to say, is that these Powers are not found even in Masters of a very high caliber. These Powers are not found even in Masters of a very high caliber. These Powers have been kept secure since the beginning of the universe till now. I no doubt had become their storehouse. This type of health (as that of Ram Chandra) can also fail to bear (the burden of) such Powers. It was just my vessel (capacity) to have made the impossible possible; and the wonder of it all is that health-condition is no hindrance to the use of these Powers. My approach, during my life-time, had attained upto the extreme state of the Ultimate Being; and upto that extent I had transferred to him.

“Now I am briefly telling about the case of M1. If his uncle (R1) had not caused hindrance to it, and he (M1) had borne the troubles of times (and world) with pleasure, he too would have earned the right to get a lot. Even now, anyway, he has nobody to match him, with the single exception of dear Ram Chandra. One thing that is not to be found anywhere, is that this fellow (M1) has loved me beyond limits; and the result is that I am seeing him with open eyes in this (high) state. This (Love) is the only real thing; and I advise both of you (M1 and Ram Chandra) to create this in your disciples. This is all in all, and everything is brought about just through it. As against it, all practices and meditations, inner and outer, are of no avail. Dear Ram Chandra never labored in any way within the bounds of strict rules and regulations. His example is not to be taken by others. He is a special vessel; nor should the attention of people be drawn to this (aspect). The average of his labour during twenty to twenty two years will be just about two or three minutes (per day). That also he did only with a view to complete the formality. But this should not serve as an example for others. These matters, I have given out today, are a very great secret. Dear Ram Chandra has drawn Nature towards himself to the extent that if he likes, he can get orders issued according to his choice; but it is his

nobility that he never leaves me aside. We have become mutually a natural necessity to each other. This example is worth emulation.”

To a query from M1, Revered Masters revealed: “B1 has turned his face downward from the cosmic region. Dryness is prevailing therein; and freshness has started moving away even from the organic region. He is depending on experience and discretion. The field of the cosmic region, he has not yet abdicated altogether. His attendants have created royal fragrance in his mind, making him Maharaj (His Holiness) and Huzoor (Revered Master) etc. (Pause) R7 has designed mental leaping and jumping as spirituality, wherein real flexibility and softness are totally absent.”

9-2-1945

Revered Master’s dictation: “The effect of transmission, described by M1, was flowing from the respected father of dear Ram Chandra. Can anybody at this time claim equality with dear Ram Chandra? Not at all. This is the effect of dear Ram Chandra’s transmission to his father for three minutes. Now quietness has amply increased in his father. The condition is that of being deaf and mute. He (Ram Chandra) has stuffed limitlessness in him (his father) all at once. Now, so long as I do not order it, do not transmit to your father again. He has taken him through the conditions of Qutub and Qutub-Ul-Aqtab etc; and stationed him at the post of Ghous-Ul-Aazam.”

Revered Master’s dictation continued: “Although dear Ram Chandra is suffering pain to the extent known only to himself or to my heart, yet he is not avoiding work at all. This thing is worth emulation. May all have the inclination to do likewise. Be it so. I have ordered dear Ram Chandra to start undergoing the impressions (Samskaras) of M1. He has already undertaken part of it. The need for this arose due to very few of his (Ram Chandra) own impressions remaining for coming to fruition. I have imparted power to those impressions of M1, which he (Ram Chandra) has undertaken to undergo, so that

the shape of their fruition may develop quickly, and thereby M1 may also get rid of them in some way. He (M1) has undergone lots of troubles concerning the household and other affairs.

10-2-1945

Revered Master's dictation continued: "I have love for M1, as his guide. Moreover, he has been helpful in my work; and he is expected to be so in the future also. Further still, my love, which relates to dear Ram Chandra as well, forces me to relieve him (M1) of his impressions to a certain extent. I have, therefore, ordered dear Ram Chandra to leave only that much of impression in him, which he may easily undergo upto the expiry of the course of his life-time. The rest of these (impression of M1) have to be undergone by him (Ram Chandra). Be it clear to M1, that if I had not been under the spell of love for him, I myself having undergone his (Ram Chandra) impressions, would not have ordered my darling Ram Chandra to undergo the impressions of someone else."

Revered Master raised a question: "What can be the device to avoid in the future the defects, which have crept into our society (Satsang)?" I submitted an answer, whereupon Revered Master remarked: "Such a brain, cast into a perfect mould, has never been born; and even in the future there is little hope in this regard. As such, by way of a friend or guide, whatever you take it to be, my advice to all of you, without consideration of elder and younger, is that you all take advantage of him (Ram Chandra); and get the intricate problems, as yet remaining beyond solution on the path of spirituality, solved. This time will not return again and again; nor may such a personality be expected to come again. Take this opportunity to be available gratis. I also assure you all that there is some special plan of the Ultimate Being in it; and as such that Ultimate Being is proving helpful through him (Ram Chandra).

These words I am uttering in the capacity of the Ultimate Being. Take his (Ram

Chandra) mind to be Divine Mind. He has nothing left with him as his. That is why the answer comes as soon as a question, howsoever difficult, is raised: thinking takes no time. Just now, I had put a very important and difficult question to him. The answer was ready as soon as the question was there; and the fragrance combined with gold was that its method in the best way descended in his thought, which was not the intention of the question, but it (method) was essential along with that (answer of the question). The method, revealed, is as following:

“When someone is seated before one (preceptor) for transmission, he/she should first clean the heart (of the aspirant), and then all the points be cleaned a little, to the extent that the materialistic defects which may be obstructing the practice, be removed. My intention is not to clean to the extent of all the points being brought to full blooming, but only to that of the removal of the dirt and dust on the way. Thereafter a light current of the aspirant’s brain be directed to his/her heart; and this current, after being cleaned to some extent, be connected to the casual body of the aspirant. Then, the trainer should introduce in seed form into the aspirant’s casual body, what may be desired to be penetrated in the aspirant; and the cavities of the causal body are made deep enough (to contain what is introduced in seed form into it). The effect develops out of the cause. As such, what is present in the seed form in the causal body, descends in the form of fruition to be undergone. But I have to say again that all this I not a job for an ordinary person.

“The method for counteracting this method is also there. If somebody adopts the above-mentioned method out of shamelessness, or sensuous greed or with the intention of getting oneself worshipped (by others), and the effect of this practice on someone be desired to be removed, the counteracting process is as following: The casual body of the (spoilt) aspirant be connected to the causal body of the cosmic region or the superior world (Brahmanda), after cleaning the way (to the cosmic region); and then the plan for the removal of the particular defect be drawn on in the subtler cosmic world. In case the person concerned has an approach upto the cosmic level then the still higher level is to be taken for counteraction. Everyone cannot have an approach upto there.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: ‘Look here. Lord Christ is here with us. Very big soul! We have decided together, to give you some work later, as desired by Lord Christ. Let the destruction (of Europe) be completed.’

Dictation from Lord Christ: “The destruction (of Europe) is God’s Will. Kingdoms will spring up on the ruins of Europe in the short time to come. Civilization is at its apex, taking the shape of destruction (by) itself. Christianity will wither away. It will take some other form under me, Swami Vivekananda and your Revered Master. India is rising up but slowly. Lust for power is great in Europe, as compared to any other region of the world.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji remarked: “You will not be assigned any work for the time being.”

11-2-1945

Revered Master’s dictation, addressed to M1: “Just now, I felt very happy. Dear Ram Chandra has modified even the method of initiation, even though this being his first initiation (of R2), there was certainly hesitation. I allow this modified method of initiation to be prevalent. My progeny that is there at present, or whatever is to come up in the future, shall adhere to it. This method, which did not occur to anybody’s mind till now, is best. Even though it appears on the face of it as quite ordinary and simple, it has innumerable advantages. My tongue is unable to describe its advantages. The experience (alone) will tell. This method may be told, when needed, to those whom M1 has permitted (to impart training). The modified method of initiation, discovered by dear

Ram Chandra is as following:

“First of all the connection of one’s disciple to one’s own Master and Highest Predecessor be established. Then, establishing the connection from the disciple’s heart to his/her brain, its chain be linked to the connection, established first. Thereafter, it is to be conceived that the connection from the heart through in the mind to the Highest Predecessor has been established; and this be endowed with a light force.

“This alone shall remain the method for the future; and this invention will be related to the name of dear Ram Chandra. This is something Providential, that such things are issuing forth from him.

“Whatever initiations have been effected by M1, are to be corrected in accordance with this method; all associates who remain attached to me, shall use just this method. Take it as a strict order.

“He (Ram Chandra) applied one more masterly stroke, viz. he effected the initiation, taking permission directly from Lord Krishna.”

12-2-1945

Revered Master’s dictation: “Look here M1, dear Ram Chandra has done away with need for you, and for me as well. He has made one more invention. One thing which was very difficult, he has made easy to a certain extent, even though that method is difficult in itself, and it is not a job for everybody in these times. The praise, anyway, is for how he came to hit upon it.

“The first method concerns the possible device to get one’s own points and plexuses opened up through one’s own efforts, after the guide has made an aspirant cross (initial spiritual) stages to some extent, and brought him to traverse the intermediary



destinations (of points and plexuses) in a shadowy (Aksi) way. For this purpose there are two devices. He (Ram Chandra) has given preference to the second device; and I also prefer the same. The first device is to go on transmitting oneself lightly from one's brain to one's own heart. Neither dear Ram Chandra nor I favour this technique, because there may be the possibility of the transmission running in excess of what may be the real need. The device, anyway, is certainly there, and it is correct.

“The second device is to suppose that one's own subtle body is present before oneself (practicant); and then transmit to the heart of the that subtle body. If one remains doing just this, progress will continually be assured quite well. The second branch of just this device in details is as following, even though is not a job for one and all: it required a very cultured and sensitive person. The technique consists in first continuing to transmit to the heart of one's own subtle body till it acquires the condition of mergence (Fana), and thereafter emergence of the condition of permanent living (Baqa) in it. At this stage the next point, viz. the soul (Rooh) is to be taken up for transmission. When the condition of mergence at this point has been arrived at, and the emergence of the state of permanent living there has started thereafter, then the third point, viz. of fire (Sirra) is to be taken up. Similarly the process is to be repeated on and on with further points viz. Khafi and Akhfa (in Sufi terminology). The benefit of this will be a good and detailed stroll. Then the state of awakening in the whole of the organic region has arrived at, then this whole state should be forcefully connected to the brain which is called the cosmic region. Then, using the same technique to widen one's condition, transmission is to be imparted to one's own subtle body from here. When here also the condition of mergence, and thereafter the state of permanent living there is created, then this condition be advanced likewise to the next higher region viz. para cosmic region; and apply the same device of transmitting from there to one's own subtle body. When there also the condition of the merging of mergence (Fana-e-fana) is arrived at; and the state of permanent living (Baqa) starts arriving thereafter, it should be advanced to the still higher region, beginning the same practice there as well. Beyond that, thought will not

work; and the need for a forceful guide will arise. I want this method to prevail in our fold.

“If some person arrives, who does not sit for transmission and still be seeking to have his/her fulfillment achieved, there can be a method for such a person. This method can be better used by ascetics. The method is as following: Fast is to be observed for three days, abstaining totally from food. Only water can be taken. Salt and soda can also be used to some extent according to the need. Care should be observed to avoid scents and smells as far as possible. During these three days, after performance of necessary duties (such as toilet habits etc.), one should lie down in the posture of a dead person (Shavasana), and have the firm supposition that the condition of the Ultimate Being, which has connection to one’s brain is descending in one’s heart in a calm condition. So far as possible, this meditations is to be continued for three days (of fasting). Thereafter, this very practice is to be performed in the morning and evening, and even several times during day (and night) for three months, trying to maintain purity of thoughts. After three months, again, a fast for three days-and if possible for one week-be observed; and adopting the same posture (Shavasana) have the firm supposition that the heart has already got filled up, and now the same state, viz. the light of the Ultimate Reality, is penetrating in the soul (at the second point of the organic region. When both these things (heart and soul) have been set right, then three months later, again fasting is undergone, the duration of which is to be three days at lest, and one week at the most, which may be extended to fifteen days in the case of a strong person. The same firm supposition is to be adopted at the sublimity of Sirra (fire plexus) i.e. third point of organic region; and then likewise the 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> points. At the 5<sup>th</sup> point, the period of fasting can be upto twenty one days. However, the meditation is to be practiced everyday at the heart alone, having the firm supposition, that whatever points have been filled up through the austere practice of fasting up to the particular day are all filled up, and (divine)light is amply raining.

“When the organic region is perfected through this method, then one can get oriented to

the cosmic region; but the method is different there. That method consists in drawing up all the power, created (in the organic region); and then having the firm supposition of assimilating one's organic mind in the cosmic mind, and derive power directly from there. Then this method can be carried on further, viz. beyond the cosmic region and still further."

Revered Master then addressed dictation to M1: "I posed a very difficult problem to dear Ram Chandra just now for solution; and he brought a perfectly right solution immediately in the best possible way. This (by itself) is a separate technique in its own right; and can be included in the above-mentioned method after perfecting the organic region. The method consists in having the firm supposition of the reverberation of (eternal) sound in the cosmic mind, and directing its jolt to the heart. This supposition, however should be contemplated for short intervals one after the other. The supposition should be taken up in proportion to the force being created. At whichever point (or plexus) its jolt will be administered, awakening of eternal sound will start there immediately. However, I prohibit application of this method (concerning the vibration of eternal sound) in general, so long as celibacy is not established properly."

13-2-1945

Revered Master's dictation: "The novel feature in your phased of life today, was that you received benefit (Faiz) directly from the Ultimate Being. This means that you have acquired a very deep and unbreakable contact with the Ultimate Being. Almost everybody receives benefit from elders (of yore) as one may deserve. By everybody I mean persons of good faith and worshippers of Master; but you alone have derived benefit from the Ultimate Being. Look here M1, very big sages of the highest levels of

approach to God have passed away, pining for this (benefit).”

Dictation from Reverend Radha Ji (8.30 P.M.): “You have love for Reverend Lord Krishna; and He has very great love for you. As such, you treat me as your mother.”

Lord Krishna Ji: “You have been allotted the foremost place among devotees. You have demonstrated such wonders, as are still unknown (even) to you. Radha Ji developed love only for you. How fortunate you are! She has taken up an attitude to you as that of a mother to her own son. You love treating her as your mother.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “We are leaping up with joy on hearing these words from Lord Krishna Himself. You have gained love from Radha Ji. I will call that man blind, who does not come to you for spiritual training.”

Revered Master: “There is no limit to my happiness. Congratulations. May God’s blessings ever shower on you.”

Reverend Radha Ji: “Wherever love be needed, just get oriented to me. I know nothing except this. I had concern only with this during my whole life.”

Revered Master: “This new relationship (Nisbat) has come up in this system (Silsila).”

14-2-1945

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “We are all along busy, doing your work. Now comes work of a different nature. Your brethren have become media of the instructions of N1. They are carrying on propaganda work for him, and his son B1. This is the information, I give you this time. When you go to Bhandara (annual function), remain alert to every point of the compass. Confidential work is coming to you. Devote most of your time to it, besides other important duties. It (confidential work) depends on you and

you alone. The Will of God is to overthrow the present state of affairs. You are the sole master of such duties. You can issue orders to other proper persons whenever need may arise. There are some other agencies at work, solely dependent on you. There is the great difficulty that we are not finding anyone fully developed in spirituality like you. So, there is a rush of work for you.”

17-2-1945

Revered Master’s dictation: “Every declaration and article will be issued under the signature of M1, whom I have appointed secretary, and the seal will be duly stamped. This will be done from now on. He (M1) can himself permit his assistant secretary R2 to perform any duty assigned by him. All others will be known as helpers. If a need for some very urgent action may arise, and M1 is not present here, the assistant secretary can also perform (that action); but it should be remembered that I alone shall remain the officer commanding i.e. nothing will ever be done without my orders, which will be coming down through the medium (Ram Chandra). R2 is authorized to select his helpers and inform M1. Helpers will be only those who are entirely our own or consider me as their own. I like to modernize the system of correspondence and other necessary matters concerning writing. In case I allow M1 to be out of station for some work his sanction will have to be obtained, communicating my commands to him through correspondence. An exception can be made in some special case; but even in that eventuality, he must have to be kept informed about the action. The secretary will keep a register, in which short notes will be entered for reference; and a copy of this will remain with the assistant secretary. I want to keep dear Ram Chandra free from these administrative arrangements concerning ministerial work: I do not want to entangle his mind in these aspects. His mind will remain the spring source of transmission alone; and orders will remain being received through it. Those persons to whom I have assigned these duties, should take these to be their own. I will establish an item for the expenditure concerning

correspondence. Those persons to whom I have assigned these duties, should perform these as my own (job). That, however, does not mean that they give up the job for which I have structured them. That shall remain their foremost duty.”

Dictation from the late revered father of M1: “I marvel at the great fortune of respected Shri Badri Prasad Ji (father of Shri Babuji). He attained to the status, without any labour, which is not available to the lot of so many, nor is expected to be so in future. I would have brought him with me, but for his state of lack of consciousness, just now I was desirous of getting merged in dear Ram Chandra, but on his (Ram Chandra) request Revered Lalaji Saheb stopped me, hinting that this was the privilege of puttana (M1). As such, I had to desist from the fulfillment of my desire. I look upon both of you (M1 and Ram Chandra) and also R2, with the same eye, treating all as my progeny. Puttana has been dealt lots of trouble by L1, to extreme limits. This tolerance of M1 shall bear fruits. Dear Puttana, you do one thing, viz. the huge collection of books, developed by me, you present to Revered Lalaji Saheb. There will be need for this (collection); and possibly his (Revered Lalaji Saheb) progeny may derive benefit from it. Otherwise all (the books) will get destroyed. My hint is for the treasure of Sanskrit books. The work will increase a lot; and there will be need for these (books). I marvel at my own fortune also, that dear Puttana came up to be the instrument for my liberation. In case of need, you can call me again.”

Revered Master: “I shall take this treasure of Sanskrit books, when needed. He be satisfied that he has made a present of this precious collection to me. It should be greatly appreciated.”

M1’s question to his father: “How do elders become aware of every matter on being free from the physical body?”

Answer: “The force of their vision gives a jolt to it (awareness), which being very sensitive, records it (matter concerned)”

Detailed explanation from Revered Master: “When an elder (divine or sage) becomes free from the physical body, the forces which work in collaboration with the physical body, get merged in their original source, in a state of oblivion; and the sense organs of that persons get into the dormant state. In other words, it can be also said that the organs of sense acquire compatibility with their original source. This is to say the ions (Paramanus) that are present in the Ultimate Being get stuffed into that Person’s being. (The word ion has been used for this sake of understanding only: it will be better to designate it as the characteristic of the Ultimate Being,) The extension of a person like this acquires a width during his life-time, that remains established exactly the same even after physical dissolution. It can be called the state of the Infinite. So the presence of such a being pervades all nooks and corners like sky (void) or air. Thus, if somebody acts in some way through sound or thought, that action creates a sort of wave in that vibration (of sound or though). To take an example, when somebody visualizes something, the force of vision gives a jolt to it, and being sufficiently sensitive, one becomes aware of it. This is just how liberated souls remain aware of everything (relevant)”

Revered Master commented: “All that dear Ram Chandra has dictated just now, is entirely his composition; and is current. It is the secret of Nature that has got blurted out of his tongue. He (Ram Chandra), however, could not find words, adequate enough to explain it. This just concerns them (liberated souls); and it is the result of his (Ram Chandra) remaining all the time in touch with me or the Ultimate Being.”

Explanation continued: “Before the beginning of creation, the state of the Ultimate Being can be conceived in the form of a dome for the sake of understanding. When the time for the creation of the universe was there, movement got started, together with a sort of will. With the start of this movement ions and molecules of power started manifesting in the shape of particles and atoms; and minerals, vegetations, and animals got woven into It like the beads of arosary. That is to say, all things came out of the source that was close to the Ultimate Being at the time of intention: and (those

manifested things) brought power with them. Nature, which was manifest in the current like a knot, was full of power. These currents contained power, i.e. sublimity of the Ultimate Being to the extent of their closeness to it. Now man, into whom these currents are penetrated and who remains circumscribed by them, brought power along with (him) to the extent of the descendance of the current. This very current got subdivided into subtle, subtler and subtlest forms for the sake of the facility of description. The return(journey) of man is to go through the process of reverse climbing up along the current, that has descended downwards; and thus reach closest to the principle under reference, will go on increasing as he will progress in climbing up more and more.

Questions concerning this narration, requiring a solution: (1) How did the spiritual stages become established, and their above mentioned divisions (broad ones) get marked out? Was it not possible to mark out more (and other) divisions (like these)? (2) How did the foundation of Hatha Yoga come to be laid down? And how did Raja Yoga come to light thereafter? What kind of relation does human psychology hold with Nature; and what are its rules? (3) Wherefrom does man derive life, or in other words, how does the force get created in him, whereby he can be able to maintain his life (4) To which region are the cells of the brain connected and what is the nature of that region? (5) How can human nature be changed? (6) What help is rendered for and against character-formation by natural influences? (7) Where to are their ions connected; and how can their (human beings) ions be altered?

“These are the problems, which I am giving to dear Ram Chandra to solve. He is to get oriented to these after the annual function. Some points, if coming to comprehension, he may note down: there is no need of much attention (to these). Just now at 9.30 P.M. he felt some movement at his right and left sides; he is to write something about it.”

We were conversing together. When during discussions, there was reference to the emblem, Revered Master quoted a Persian couplet; “Remain absorbed from end to end with the effulgence of the face of the Beloved: when you have got acquainted with the



Beloved, just become a stranger to yourself.”

18-2-1945

Revered Master confided: “Your mother (wife of Revered Lalaji Saheb) has suffered tremendous deception. She has been dealt marvelous assurances (green gardens). Greed is a terrible ghost.”

Again at 1.00 P.M.: “After very long deliberation, I have arrived at the conclusion that B1 e got totally devoid of spirituality; and all his plexuses be brought to a mute state. Make him entirely dull.” The order was complied with.

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “When we and the renowned sages of the world are acknowledging your superiority, there is no reason why your brethren should slacken in the performance of their duties. We shall remove all such things, coming in the way. Let these vagabonds disappear altogether.”

Dictation from Lord Krishna, in reply to the prayer for reform of the society of associates (Satsang): “Your Satsang is in a bad shape. People have got amply affected. I shall order for the upturning (of the effect). Defamation of such a great Personality (Revered Lalai Saheb) cannot be allowed to occur. (Pause) I inform you that your Revered Guide has done away with your weakness. He has left nothing lacking as regards bolstering your courage and providing you with spiritual light. It is upto you people to get in the saddle and act or not.”

Revered Master clarified: “Dear Ram Chandra acquainted Lord Krishna with the state of affairs prevailing in His (Lord Krishna) home (Sahaj Marga or Satpada Pantha) and prayed that his (Ram Chandra) brethren, who are initiated on the hand of his Revered Master and consider themselves connected to Him (Revered Master) get reformed; and that it should not occur that on these people (brethren) going to some elder sage and

revealing their condition before him (elder sage) cause defamation of the good name of his (Ram Chandra) Revered Master. Thereupon Reverend Lord Krishna replied that defamation of such a great personality cannot be allowed to occur, and on His own accord dictated that declaration (to be made) finally. Now take it as God's command."

Final declaration (as dictated by Lord Krishna): "Happy tidings that our Revered Master did everything possible and undertook hardships to bolster up and reform you people; but you have not been stirred up, nor have (occasional) chiding and instructions brought about (desired) effect. (God forbidding, the occasion for making this declaration may not arise.) The meaning of this I take to be, that the condition you are sitting smug upon, is intended to defame the good name of our Revered Guide, by you people. Have the trust that I will not allow this to occur. By God I declare that it will not be allowed to happen that way Alas! You people did not derive benefit out of the extreme kindness of my Lord. Now, just bring to your thought the other side of it, which is the opposite of that (mercy) and see the effect. That is all."

19-2-1945 (Time 7.00 P.M. and after)

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: "The man (A3) sitting before you may be trusted as necessity demands. Never mind if the secret is out. It has to be revealed some day or the other. This is my opinion. Consult your Guru, the Governing Authority."

Revered Master: "I am also of the opinion that the secret be deviled."

Question: "In what way?"

Swami Vivekananda Ji: "Tell him (A3) plainly that your Master has made arrangements for His work and the Satsang (society of spiritual associates); and that it is you (RamChandra) who is at its heads."

Revered Master: "Reveal. No need of any further delay."

Swami Vivekananda Ji: [Tell him (A3) that you (Ram Chandra) receive the orders directly from Him (Revered Lalaji Saheb) as well as from me (Swami Vivekananda Ji). If he doubts yours sincerely, he can put you to test. Add that it will remain confidential till it is announced in Bhandara.”

Revered Master: “Dear Ram Chandra and M1 should reach Fatehgarh on March 29, 1945. M1 should reach there on 28<sup>th</sup>. If Inspector Sahib (II) goes with him, it will be good. Otherwise, he (II) should participate without fail in Bhandara; there is an invitation on my behalf.”

20-2-1945

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I had been a Fatehgarh just now. Your aunt (wife of Revered Master Lalaji Saheb) is lamenting over the loss of Ji. There are some agencies at work against you. “They have pumped in an air of inhospitality towards all of you, I mean people of Shahjahanpur. I assure you that this will not be allowed to occur. The wave of the Almighty is moving towards destruction altogether. We are to some extent obliged to restraint, on account of your checking us from doing so. Your Guru is a bit perplexed, considering the situation before us. That is the news, I brought for your information. Do soon, what is to be done. Do not waste time. We will not listen to even one word (against the implementation of the plan for destruction) after Bhandara (annual function). Then, whatever we order will be incumbent upon you and your subordinates to implement unhesitatingly. Tell II (inspector Saheb) to be cautious. He will be rewarded for his work. I trust him much, as he is connected to our Lord, the Supreme Authority. We have been busy all night long to handle the situation. They move on to some other way; a difficulty arises on account of your kind-heartedness towards them. For this very reason, we are giving allowance. I am a man of dynamite spirit and cannot tolerate such things and affairs. That is why your Master has handed over the charge of His work to me. I tell you the truth: had it been all up to me, I would have

annihilated the wrong persons altogether. I have taken you as my medium, who to some extent in this matter follows the footprints of his kind-heartedness towards them. For this very reason, we are giving allowance. I am a man of dynamite spirit and cannot tolerate such things and affairs. That is why your Master has handed over the charge of His work to me. I tell you the truth: had it been all up to me, I would have annihilated the wrong persons altogether. I have taken you as my medium, who to some extent in this matter follows the footprints of his kind-hearted Guru. I will make you alright; I mean to bring you on to the path I follow, in case the opportunity presents itself. I pray that such things, as being neglected by us, may not happen. Let us wait for the result of Bhandara. Doom is sealed.”

22-2-1945

Revered Master’s dictation: “In this age things are coming to pass in such ways as render it difficult to come out unscathed. Real Man is one who is able to live uniquely in the midst of all people. The atmosphere has taken the effect of the human impressions (Samskaras) to the extent that the thoughts of people are not allowed to remain unruffled. This is due to our own defect. Our will has got so much weakened that the shape of succor does not appear to be there. This is because people derive pleasure out of the derangement of their thoughts. Nobody is able to consider himself free of a job that has been completed, to take up another job in hand (free from the burden of the impression of the job, already completed). The cause of the perplexity of the heart in general is just that too many ideas are entertained at one and the same time, or else one thought is unduly stressed to such an extent as to affect the heart. To be rid of this malady, some work connected to God is to be taken up with such deep attachment as to have the sameword developed as a tool for one’s salvation. Just this teaching is imparted to everybody in our fold: one who acts upon this prescription achieves success to a large extent. It may be adopted in any form. There is no harm at all in that regard. The main

thing is being concerned with the purpose in view. One thing more is essential which everybody should adopt taken to be the main concern. Now the questions arises, how this can be brought to one's lot. The answer is that God's shape is to be supposed in some actual person who is considered by one to be perfect; and one is to start loving that particular person. One thing even now remains: how is this sentiment to come up? The answer to it is right conduct. The problem is still not solved as it gives rise to the thought as to how we are to develop rightness of conduct. The reply to this is prayer and the habit of having regard and respect for others. One more question arises: how do we come upto that state? The answer to it is good company, along with stories of elder sages and devotees.

“How to make one's will power strong without taking up any practice or meditation? The answer consists in that some work be taken up as the main one, the other jobs be treated as being at the second and third place (in order of priority). This problem is still not solved. How is one to structure oneself so that this would start happening and a habit would be developed to that effect? The reply to this query is that one should first of all have the firm determination that strong will power has to be developed. Then he is to take up the work. The result of this will be that according to the philosophy concerning the casual existence, outlined by dear Ram Chandra earlier some time, an impression will be carved therein, and the work taken up from this point of view, will be helpful. Now the question arises to how its impression is to be carved in the causal body! The answer to this is singleness of orientation. The problem remains yet unsolved. How is singleness of orientation to be formed? The reply to this is that one should first take oneself to be single oriented. This is called supposition, which dear Ram Chandra has very often adopted in meditation of Master's form; and it is just his (Ram Chandra) invention. The method of supposition consists in having the firm thought of only that which is to be done and brought to success; and create no thought against that. This practice can be applied in case of any worldly action, provided that it is right.”

Revered Master's dictation at 5.25 P.M.: “It is a matter of great happiness that dear Ram

Chandra has established such a deep connection to the Ultimate Being that direct commands in the form of divine revelations (Shruti) have started descending on him with effect (from today). There is no parallel to the example of the training and its technique, imparted by me to dear Ram Chandra. It cannot occur to the comprehension and imagination of the great and greater ones (mean sages); and to speak the truth, he (Ram Chandra) was also the deserving vessel for that training, which is of an entirely new kind. The transmission I gave to him was absorbed by him, but was thrown off in case of others, when that transmission came to touch with their condition. However, I had done this (filling dear Ram Chandra with a special condition) after quite some time, when I was wholly certain that he was deserving that and capable of my successor-representativeness. There was an effect of the transmission by others at the apparent (outer) screen (of dear Ram Chandra's being); but when someone took the inner screen (of his being) in one's thought, he (transmitting person) himself would start being hypnotized. I am revealing something very confidential:

Whoever would transmit to him started deriving benefit, which was taken to be the benefit coming from me. Look here M1, such training can be imparted to one and only one (disciple); and this is possible when sufficient affinity gets developed between the two (Master and disciple). This is God's gift: it is not a matter of one's power. Nobody imparted correct guidance in the real way to him (Ram Chandra); but even he was attempted to be led astray (by some people). In case of meditation of Master's form, which was not prescribed to this poor fellow (Ram Chandra), but even prohibited, he had to depend on his own humble invention' and it came up right. Since God had to bring him up to his present state, this practice (meditation on Master's form) started automatically (in the right way). Dear M1, one thing is a matter of sheer impertinence, which people (I mean disciples) remain doing in general. During meditation on Master's form, they take up the thought of a part of Master's body, viz. the head, whereas the whole figure of Master should be taken in thought. Dear Ram Chandra had practiced it exactly that way; and the fun of it has been that he was not able to practice Shaghal

Rabta in the right way. Under the stress of this very thought (feeling of guilt), he had asked me, mentioning that he was not able to practice it. I had replied only (considering it inopportune to tell him more) that he would not be able to practice it because mergence was there in him. He, however, even then could not rest with it; he continued remembrance of me in subtlest forms; and when even remembrance started being forgotten, he just supposed that he was in the state of remembrance of his Master, according to his theory, that he had invented earlier. Even after that, he altered many forms of this practice; and invented one or other technique so that this practice of meditation on Master's form remained continuing in some shape or other. He adhered to this thing right upto the day on which I shattered his limitations. Even after that he refreshed and remained refreshing the same thing through the force of those, limitations, with the result that I had to create the thought of stopping him to do so, in the heart of M1. The reason was that he Ram Chandra) had got oriented with full power which came to his experience on bondages having been broken. That too was the last state of Shaghal Rabta, which he maintained in tact. He had retained this habit over a very long time; and hence he used this power to strengthen the same (habit).

“I myself invented a technique today, viz. a poetic couplet capable of arousing love be taken up, and recited again and again. The person who recites the poem should remain filling (the audience with love); and the other person, who should be very strong, should remain drawing out that effect slowly and lightly. This process of snatching of love-effect has to be introduced when the waves of love start pervading the audience, with the thought that what is being filled in the audience is coming slowly after filling them towards the person exercising the drawing-out technique. There is no need for exercising a too strong will, because the person filling (the audience with love) does not, and should not fill them up to that (strong) extent. The benefit of his is to be that they (audience) will have got the taste of sublimity; and light fomentation will be imparted to their plexuses. This method, however, need not be applied by every Tom, Dick and Harry. M1 can apply it, but then dear Ram Chandra will be required to sit exercising the

drawing out process; and when dear Ram Chandra does the filling in, M1 will be required to sit for the drawing out. This means that both persons involved in this technique should be strong enough. This should not be allowed for everybody (to practice). The prescription is well tried out. It can also be done, that in case two persons, as required are not possible to be available together, one person may go on filling as well as drawing out by himself alone. In this regard I have liked the method of dear Ram Chandras, viz. the round that is started is taken to oneself passing through the practicers (Abhyasis). This method is best in the circumstance of a second person of required caliber not being there.”

Revered Master’s dictation: “During this short period I have brought those who rendered assistance to me and proved to be helpful to me at a fine stage, which was difficult (to do) for anybody else. Now the question is why I did like that. Is it to be designated as my selfishness, or is it to be considered as God’s command? Both these (motives) can be correct, in their own right. The purpose of structuring them, in fact, was and is something else. They should and they do assist in God’s work. Here the first thing (motive) ends. Now the second one makes a start, viz. the state of my Satsang is in a bad shape. This all of you know and I have remained continuously pointing it out. You have just to consider it your duty to set it right. The methods you may go on taking from me; but for this purpose a guide is also required; and he must be a person who is to be directly connected to me, so that orders may be reaching them, and they (persons structured by me) are able to follow my commands. Now, it becomes incumbent to this effect that whatever is to serve the purpose be enquired of me. My instrument is present there; it doesn’t need being repeated again and again.

“Now I am expressing the arrangement that I have conceived. It is that M1 should remain at B..., and R2 should look to the work in this district (Shahjahanpur). This should, however, be remembered, that each of them can work in the other one’s circle. In fact there are no circles; these are a matter of administrative arrangement for the sake of the convenience of people, I mean the people who receive and are to receive training.



Reform of character will be their (M1 and R2) duty; and spiritual training will also go along with it. Now the question arises as to what sort of character is to be there! The answer is that the preceptors should themselves adopt my way of life, and impart the training accordingly to those others.”

Question: “How can this thing be possible?”

Answer: “They (trainers) should themselves become the examples of the character that happens to be mine. This thing is to be very much emphasized; and the methods of prayer should be used for making this effective. I tell this to everybody. R2 will have to tour this district (Shahjahanpur), and wherever I may send him; and he will have to assist K2. M1 also can send him (R2) and K2, wherever proper. All this work will remain just mine. Further (than this) I shall issue orders, whenever and whatever I shall consider proper.”

25-2-1945

Swami Vivekananda Ji dictated a letter to be sent to K2: “I have been intending to reach you by this very train, instead of R2, who is busy with his mother. You can call me or any of us when you require help. We are all busy with work of an important nature; and hence we cannot leave station.” He (Swami Ji) instructed the dispatch of this letter at once.

Revered Master’s instruction: “Start the practice of singing songs in my Satsang; but there is no need for sending for musicians, or drummers, nor professional Qawaali reciters should be invited for this purpose. Only the person, who is transmitting, can sing: in general, all those participating in Satsang (group meditation) shall not sing in the assembly. If the person, transmitting, considers it necessary, and the minds of the people

in the assembly lack concentration, he can ask one or two persons, specially imbued with love, to sing; but not on every occasion. Only such persons as may be capable to transmit, can be given preference (in this regard). In the assembly and at the Samadhi, whether it be mine or yours, prostitutes are never to be called (for the purpose of singing) This precaution should be strictly observed.”

26-2-1945

Revered Master’s dictation: “I am coming from Fatehgarh. I have studied the situation; and am telling you about it off and on. I have put up a special personality, viz. Swami Vivekananda Ji, to this task; and he has not returned, nor does he intend to return to the Real Storehouse (of power) so long as the work is not completed. His (Swami Vivekananda Ji) personality of an elderly sage, has no parallel to it. Now I come to the essential purpose. I am assigning a job to II (Laloo or Inspector Saheb) so as to turn her away from what the opponents have tutored her, which is falsehood. The purpose and meaning of what has been told to her and fixed in her mind against a particular person or persons belonging to Shahjahanpur, happens to be something else, which will be soon clear to her. For the time being, she should get rid of the poison that has been administered to her mind, and remove the hatred (against Shahjahanpur people) that has got developed in her. He (II) should talk to her about all necessary matters too, in this regard. I mean to say that she should be leveled up to the extent of coming to the right path before the revelation of the real (representation) takes place. When the revelation is made about whom it concerns, she should weigh that person well, and see whether he has the same affection for her as a son should have for his mother. One precaution is necessary to observe, viz. he (II) should keep this matter (substance of the declaration to be made) confidential, not informing her or others until he (Ram Chandra) reaches there, and I issue the order (for the declaration to be made). The presence of II is essential at the time that the revelation is made. He should be there at the time of that the revelation

is made. He should be there at the time of the declaration and it will be even better if he (II) himself performs this good job, and makes the declaration. If he is able to do this job, I will be happy; and his name (II) will be written in bold letters in that history, which will be written after (the physical dissolution of) Ram Chandra. These notes that I am preparing will be included in the (auto) biography of him prepared; and my biography of him prepared; and my biography shall also be there just alongwith that, because nobody could understand me better than he. I am going to Fatehgarh again. Swami Vivekananda Ji has taken a vow not to return to the Real Storehouse (of power) till getting his work completed.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji (at 7.30 P.M.): “Here is a very big soul before you! Guru Nanak. He wants to give you a sitting. (Pause) He is going to merge in you. He has, merged in you (Pause) He has brought a great work for you, which he himself will dictate.”

Dictation from Guru Nanak Deva: “My cherished hope has got fulfilled today. I thank your Guru that He structured you so, as to be the centre of attraction for all eyes (of elder sages) now. My work has got very much degenerated. Ignorance is increasing. There is no concern with spirituality. Sikhs have become a political sect. The time for demonstrating supreme bravado is no more there. It was alright earlier when the country was facing the foreign (Muslim) invasion.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I give you authority on his behalf to train his disciples.”

Guru Nanak Deva: “I have to say nothing more just now. You are very busy with our work at this time: It shall be looked into afterwards. One thing I shall certainly say, viz. you cannot reform them (Sikhs) during your life-time. Your work will start after your life. However, that does not mean that you give up doing that during your life-time.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Now you will receive dictates directly from him (Guru Nanak Deva) as well. I am going back to my work, which your Guru is looking after during my

absence. I do not want to give trouble to Him anymore.”

Revered Master’s dictation (sometime later): “Look here M1, what a nice etiquette dear Ram Chandra observed at this time! When Guru Nanak Deva accorded permission to him, I was not present here. If he (Ram Chandra) had subjected to what Guru Nanak Deva was telling him to be referred to me for my approval, in the presence of Swami Vivekananda Ji, what a terrible insult it would have meant to him (Sami Vivekanada Ji)”. He (Ram Chandra) took Swami Ji in my place at that time; and just this was due regard and proper etiquette. We both (Revered Lalaji Saheb and Swami Vivekananda Ji) have an equal right on him. He ought to have done just this: I felt very happy. And when he sat in meditation (before Guru/Nanak Deva), he had me in his thought: this was the best conduct at that time. I want just such persons in my organization; but alas! My intense desire remains just at that. This is not at all difficult, though apparently it seems to be difficult. There is need for just getting glued a little ( a little attachment); and that getting glued should be such as may never get released. This aphorism, I am telling today, is very good: It is to be useful for everybody. M1 should instruct his disciples to try developing like that. I shall feel very happy if everybody is able to perform just like this. Then my mission would have got fulfilled; and nothing more would remain to be done.”

1-3-1945

Dictation from Lord Krishna: “Swami Vivekananda Ji has not yet returned to the main storehouse of power. He has taken a vow to return there only on getting the work completed, even if it may mean until the doomsday (Qayamat). Of course, it will not be like that.. There is one thing more. I have brought my entire power to your view. Consider it just yours. At the time o physical dissolution your Revered Master had also followed this very method. He had got the imperience. I have done the same. Consider it

just yours. Its connection has got established directly: take it as transferred.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I am leaping with joy that from this day, you are the master of such a great power. Utilize it in Bhandara (annual function). I will tell you the method for its utilization; and also the point. Nobody can stand before such a great power. You can make it a destructive weapon.”

2-3-1945

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I have been working all along day and night, making your way smooth and glossy. I have taken up the work practically since this morning, and selected a few persons for destruction. One thing is pricking me to a great extent, viz. that a great havoc has been wrought by the persons whom the Lord thought of as His own. You have made them a target, leaving one. I am postponing the destruction of M10 for the time being and of B1 as well. There is a great idiot in your society called R7. Have no expectation from him. He is going his own way and follows nobody. Charge our Lord’s Samadhi with full power as soon as you reach there. I like Samadhi “the Rising Sun” better than anything in the world I will be there with whose sole destructive power. Move it when necessary. You can knock it down at any moment. That is the only work I took up now and the power of mercy (Dayal Shakti) will rush up from your Lord. You can utilize it if so required. Have this note with you. Lord Krishna has ordered me just now to annihilate the person, we do not need.”

Revered Master’s dictation addressed to M1: “One is helpless in the face of God’s command. Whatever He ordains, must happen. The sage has nothing to do with relationship. This I ordain to you people as well. Have regard for this (principle) in this life, as well as after that.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji continued: “I have taken M10 as target for destruction. One chance is given by your Guru. I remember the letter and the words of

our Lord. There is one remedy for him (M10) that if he prostrates himself before you, begging pardon for his letter, then the least punishment may be awarded. Punishment he will receive; these are our Lord's words given in the letter. I can bear everything, but not the words, that touched the heart of our Lord, your Guru. How does this happen? When anything touches you. These are the words of Lord Krishna coming directly to me. 'Unless he comes down on his knees, I won't excuse him.'

3-3-1945 (Time 2.40 P.M.)

Revered Master's revelation: "N1 did not spare (his effort) even now: he wished that this trouble be got transferred towards Ram Chandra; but nothing happened."

4-3-1945

Revered Master's dictation: "He (Ram Chandra) has solved the problem concerning what is called total transformation, so well, it would have been difficult to solve in this way even by philosophers, devoting the most valuable part of their lives to it. His (Ram Chandra) insight always moves to the point, and hits exactly, where it needs to strike."

Later at 5.00 P.M. on hearing the letter received from S1. Swami Vivekananda Ji informed; "Your Revered Guru has gone to S... and is working havoc. Check Him. Check Him soon. "Prayers were offered to Revered Master, and He desisted from what He was starting to do.

Remark from Lord Krishna (5.25 P.M.): "I have also got the news concerning the letter."

Dictation from Sami Vivekananda Ji: "I have been studying the situation so far, doing my work at the same time. A few persons, disturbing our lord's work, must have to see the end. My step will be stringent after Bhandara. I will make my nature so as to take revenge against those who have troubled our Lord. There are a few gentle people among

you, who yield to some extent. Others are going the way akin to S1. He is a person of mean nature and not fit for the society. It was our Lord's ability to raise him (S1) to the level of a polished person. This is the only person who can pounce upon you. You did your duty (to save him from our Lord's destructional wrath). Have no fear. If he comes in Bhandara, remain alert. You should be guarded in every way. There is danger to your life; but that will not happen. Your Guru has given you sufficient directions. I suggest one thing more; when you go to sleeping the night, one of the your associates must remain awake so long as you sleep. The man selected for this job should be quite strong and healthy. All of you should remain close to one another in the same room or compound. I will not allow you to go anywhere."

Revered Master's dictation: "What Revered Swami Ji has instructed, precautions in that regard are essential, even though nobody has the power to do something of the kind in my presence. Those who are workers, and who are responsible for the protection of dear Ram Chandra, should not take part in Shanti Patha (silent chanting of the words 'Om Shanti' for peace to pervade the whole universe).

These include M1 and R2."

5-3-1945

Revered Master's dictation: "For the future, I prohibit this method of total transformation being practiced without my presence or that of dear Ram Chandra. This method should not at all be applied to one's disciples. If a need to that effect may arise the case be sent to dear Ram Chandra. In this method there is the possibility that past impressions may descend to form a cluster at one place and adopt the shape of immediate fruition (causing suffering). Just this is the dangerous aspect of it."

6-3-1945

Revered Master's dictation (concerning the publication of His biography developed from some manuscript papers): "The name of N1 should never occur in my biography. (Pause) How many copies of this book have been published; and how many have been sold? I like that all the literature, published thus far, be brought to you; and it will be even better if those who have purchased these books also return these to you; and the price be refunded to them. If they like. The publications have been brought in a very bad (and objectionable) shape. I like that all of my manuscript literature be collected at one place; and read to me. I shall tell whether some particular anecdote is worth publication or not. I shall take Rs. 500 from dear Ram Chandra in this regard, which will all be spent only under this head. Whatever income shall accrue from it, shall be deposited in the account of the Satsang (society of spiritual associates); and will be utilized only in that work. I shall remain instructing step by step in this regard; and shall also point out, wherein my originality in the composition be there. The difficult topics, dealt with briefly by me, may also be commented upon. If all that be brought here (Shahjahanpur), it will very easily be got compiled in the form of books. I shall be giving two hours of my time daily (for this purpose). Assure your mother (wife of

Revered Lalaji Saheb) that these things that will remain with you, shall not go to anybody else; and that it is your privilege as well as your duty (to have all that and do the needful). It is only through the successor representative that these matters are brought to perfection. History stands witness to it."

Question by M1: "What is the method whereby the thought arising in one's mind is made to strike the Master immediately?"

Answer: "This can be achieved through establishing extreme affinity with the Master. The method consists in going on making oneself calm so as to annual and tide altogether. This concerns practice; and it can be comprehended only through that. This is known as the condition of the 'Dead'. This alone is 'Jeevan Mukti' (liberation in life) in



the real sense, if the condition has become like that of a dead person. This condition did not develop in anybody; and I just went away with the craving in my heart (to see it in someone). Although the pleasure of spirituality is experienced to a large extent before arriving at it, it is really there only after it. I was in this state since birth; and the same has been the case with dear Ram Chandra. Now the question arises, how it is achieved. The practice briefly is this: One should continue cleansing oneself from the externally expressed self, that generally remains prevalent (there). This will be helpful to that end. Dear M1., this is something very great; this can also be known as perfect mergence. Nothing remains to do or practice after that: to remain His no doubt remains duty; and what was my way during all of my life. You people also should never give it up; always consider yourself to be His, however high your status may become. Dear Ram Chandra's training started from this condition. This much he had brought with him since birth (as earlier attainment). Nobody had the capacity to view it, so as to impart training to him with this estimate in view: even to my comprehension this thing had occurred only in due course of time."

7-3-1945

Revered Master's dictation (to M1): "The style of speech should be like mine, viz. devoid of rise and fall in pitch; so to say, rather in the shape of the divine current flowing evenly since the beginning of creation. I had copied just that. Its benefits are numerous, beyond the possibility of narration. This is a philosophy, viz., when the flow of talking proceeds in conformity with Reality, there develops a state of affinity between the two (Reality and speech); and through that (affinity) the divine way starts developing automatically. This results in effectiveness: whatever is spoken goes on making a dent (in the heart of the persons of the audience). In other words, a sort of relationship with the current of Reality gets established; and when a relationship is created, effectiveness has to be there. If someone copies it, only those words will be flowing out during speech which are intended and are right. This thing will be mentioned in my biography also. The technique for (achieving) this consists first of all in attempts at reducing the rise and

fall invoice (which is also called sharpness), while talking. This flow (of speech) will go one acquiring affinity with that (current of Reality) to the extent that such a reduction is achieved (progressively). By 'sharpness' I do not imply anger alone: that remains something extremely gross; and it should not be allowed admittance at all in this context. What I mean is that the flow of speech should not carry any kind of burden on it. An illustration of this can be the currents of (still) air. This is very difficult as well' but everything is possible to achieve through sustained effort and courage, if Master's Grace is along with it. A Persian couplet: 'There is no difficulty, which does not come to be easy; it behoves Man to be never hopeless.'

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: "I am taking a very serious step against M10. He is poisoning the brains of all the people owing allegiance to our Lord. I am trying to make them better. We are doing our best."

Revered Master's dictation: "S1 is also to come (at the annual function); and that unfortunate fellow (N1) too shall come. Continue listening to abuse and go on working silently. Use powers but rightly or for whatever there may be an order. I am telling you (M1 and R2) one thing, which will be very beneficial: Upto the time of the declaration, and in case of need after that even, connection be linked to the power of dear Ram Chandra (which has been bestowed to him). But look, I do not permit it after the annual function. Then my own power will start running through all of you. Everyone, however, must exercise control over one's tongue. External manifestation of respect (and courtesies) is not prohibited. Our conduct is with us: the other one stands responsible for his own. What I mean by 'manifest courtesies' is not to give an inkling to anyone-even if it be that unfortunate one (NI) himself – that I (you) stand in opposition (to him); but rather try on your own turn to meet (him) as hitherto, in performance of your duty, which is right as well. (Pause).

(Time: 9.40 P.M.) "I have bestowed to dear Ram Chandra control over the element of fire. His temperament is extremely cool, which created a need for this (gift).To bestow

control over this element is prohibited, which I had observed. You (Ram Chandra) too should not bestow control over it to anybody. Often people lack the capacity to bear it; and rather people mostly do not have it.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Congratulations. Some more powers are coming to you, which are lying reserved. These are special gifts of Lord Krishna, in pursuance of the duties, you have performed in South India. Lord Krishna keeps an inexhaustible store for you. The pleasure seekers require neither you, nor your help. The world will recognize your authority, but only after you (physically depart). I have been working at J. since 5 o’clock; It is about 10 now.”

8-3-1945

Revered Master’s revelation: “Lord Krishna had the intention of merging totally in dear Ram Chandra, but due to the apprehension of the physical body being left behind, I prayed for that thing not to be done. Swami Vivekananda Ji also agreed with an supported this thought of mine. Even then, Lord Krishna has reserved a whole store (of powers) with me for him (Ram Chandra). This is the reward for the work in South India.”

9-3-1945

Dictation from Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu: “I have also inspected your Satsang; and found everything in a bad shape. In your Satsang, just on the physical departure of your spiritual guide, such a condition came to prevail as to make the capacity for comprehension of the real thing being lost. This happened because such transmission as was available during His life-time, was not administered thereafter. (Now) selfishness has got combined with transmission. Where such a condition prevails, Reality is bound

to get lost. I had the desire that you would pay attention to my society as well, after setting your own work right. Your Master is also in agreement with this (proposal). I have already given my status to you. I am telling you one thing concerning my life: I had established a very deep relationship with Lord Krishna during my life-time. His form was all the time in my view. Now the same chain has come to be established in another form. This system will make progress. Your work is being carried on by a very big soul, which has no example. Till now the attempt is to have the needed result with least harm. In the future, everything will be done as needed. At the time of Bhandara, if the need may arise, you should call me also. My power is working with you, even though its awareness is not there. Nearly all great elder sages of yore have viewed you with appreciation; all are waiting for Bhandara.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Chaitanya Mahaprabhu is absorbed in you. Feel that he is within you. You can ask anything if required. When you take up his work, his dictates will run through you.”

Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu : “What Swami Vivekananda Ji has told you is quite correct. Whenever you will invoke it, my power will start to work. Your tour of South India has been very good.”

Revered Master’s dictation: “Look dear M1, work is increasing. No doubt, however, all are waiting for my success. I am worried about the health of dear Ram Chandra. So far as possible, I avoid assigning work to him. Not only this many elder sages are coming to me. The purpose of all of them is to assign work to him. (Pause) I would have made SI also something, if he had go oriented this way. I would have recompensed him for the love that he had for me during my life-time. If M1 considers it proper, he may show him (S1) only this portion of these notes and tell him to come and have the experience just by way of a trial. If the condition is not liked by him, I shall take it back again. (Pause) I repeat that such an opportunity will not be there again and again. This is the time that whatever little help someone may have given, I give him hundred times that in return. I

will do the same in the future. When my eye takes a turn, there will be no benefit henceforth. There is still time.”

Revered Master’s dictation continued (time 5.53 P.M.): “I am coming just now from Reverend Lord Krishna. He is of the opinion that you (Ram Chandra) have to be sent to Hardwara on the occasion of Kumbha Parwa (big gathering of pilgrims at every twelve years’ interval for bathing in the holy river Ganges). As such, this cannot be avoided. Fix up your mind (for this programme) on return from the annual function.”

10-3-1945

Revered Master’s dictation: “I tried a lot to avoid sending him (Ram Chandra) to Hardwara. Finally just this decision came to be made, and I too had to agree with it, viz. he is to be sent there without fail. Just this is the order of Reverend Lord Krishna... (Pause) He (Ram Chandra) had the intention to stay at Rishikesh; but that is not proper. He must stay at Hardwara itself; and have control all-over from there. Since there will be a big gathering of mendicants there, even though sages are to be scarce, there may be some ones who may be exercising their miraculous powers. If they prove troublesome, you snatch off the powers. During the previous Kumbha, quite some time back, one person had arrived there, who had caused lots of troubles to people. If that person again acts or prepares to act like that, do snatch his powers without fail.

“The sage in charge (Abdal) of Mathura was assigned a duty for three months; but he remained on duty for one month more. Yester night when he mentioned about it, he was relieved from the duty. He desire some return for his services, which was bypassed at the time. Today in the evening he was paid in return; and amply rewarded. His points of the organic region and the cosmic region were brought up to a fine awakened state. His organic region was already in a blooming open state. His organic region was already in a blooming open state. He burst out in tears on comprehending the condition, which was

being penetrated in him; and said that he had just remained longing (and pining) for such a condition all his life thus far. Out of happiness he extended the term of his duty on his own, by one month more. I shall increase it by fifteen more days; ‘on my part.’”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji (Time 8.00 P.M.): “I am now at Fatehgarh with your Guru. It is doing well. I will give you notes after Bhandara. I have marked out a few persons for destruction.”

12-3-1945

Revered Master’s dictation (Time 11.15 A.M.): “Somebody is attacking. Sit alert> (Pause) Nothing now. The person who indulged in this act has no power to perform it. He wanted to activate the power of the cosmic region and direct it to descend on your brain. B1 had read about this practice somewhere in books. He does not possess the capability for this. (Pause) He has tried again; but this is beyond him. He has just put you on alert.”

Revered Master commanded me at 11.30 A.M. to get oriented to a man of God in Persia, who was departing from the physical world. As such, I transmitted to him for five minutes; and stopped when he breathed his last.

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I am doing my work at Fatehgarh. I want to come to you, but I cannot leave the work.”

Revered Master: “Look M1, dear Ram Chandra did something marvelous. There is no limit to my happiness. When Revered Swami Ji told him that he desired to see him, but was unable to leave the work, he immediately reached there (Fatehgarh), and put his head on Swami Ji’s feet. What an item of refined conduct that struck his insight. Such an example will be rare to find.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I have not seen such an example anywhere. My heart is filled

up with joy to see such a person of acute understanding. You (Ram Chandra) have got such a natural instinct. I have prepared notes for you. The work is coming. I am so pleased with you that I will not keep a shell reserved. All that remains with me, will be transferred to you. Lord Krishna is arriving here.”

Reverend Lord Krishna: “I myself have observed the condition of your Satsang. It has got spoilt beyond a parallel being found. Cold water has been thrown on the labour of such a great elder sage (Revered Lalaji Saheb): even God cannot forgive this fault. I have reserved my boomerang for this work; that along will be the weapon in the last resort. I am going now. Shri Radha Ji is also with me; and is going after blessing you to have success in your work for this mission (job concerning the reform of the spiritual society of Revered Lalaji Saheb).”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Look here, such a great soul as Radha Ji Herself is before you. Her words cannot go without effect.”

Revered Master: “Look M1, just now, something of great significance concerning our welfare has happened Lord Krishna had arrived just now with the thought of getting merged into him (Ram Chandra). Some item of his conduct and thought happens to be so beautiful that the extreme link (of divine connection) comes to get shaken. The incident concerning dear Ram Chandra and Swami Vivekananda Ji, that I mentioned having occurred just now (a little earlier) is not something ordinary, if viewed carefully. This intelligence is to be designated as discriminative intelligence (Viveka) or something even superior to that. The fact remains that he (Ram Chandra) does not possess anything as he has given up everything. That is the reason why such things occur automatically. May God make my future progeny copy it. What shall I say yet concerning the present progeny. When time comes I will tell them also exactly what I am telling you (M1). This capacity does not seem to be there in those coming after him (Ram Chandra). As such, I want that he gets all work completed before leaving his (physical) body. It is a Divine Gift, which descends with respect to (appropriate) time: everybody is not to partake in

it.”

After a few lines of confidential notes, Revered Master’s dictation continued: “If I impart a little movement to this power, there is bound to be a wonderful dispensation to enjoy: my reference is to the Bhandara. Not a single minute goes vacant of taking care of him (Ram Chandra) for me; and I do not let it (Power) come up, but rather keep it subdued. I am telling you again, M1, that this power cannot come again.”

13-3-1945

Revered Master’s instructions: “JI is of the opinion that the spiritual condition of everybody be snatched off all at once. This is to include M10 also. I leave II aside. Both of you (M1 and Ram Chandra) do this work tonight.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I agree with the proposal.

Revered Master: “When M10 may recognize you, return (the snatched off spiritual condition) to him. Nobody is to be spared. If you like, you assign some work out of this to R2 as well. Leave aside your mother (Revered Lalaji Saheb’s wife) and the wife of J1 as well as all of those who have faith in you.”

Dear brother Ji: “This includes D2 and all of my disciples. Take up M10 as a special case. I am telling this to both (M1 and Ram Chandra).”

14-3-1945

Revered Master’s revelation: “Only God is the protector of his (Ram Chandra) life: I shall try to retain it to my best capacity.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “It is your duty to impart power to Hindu Rishis, scattered all over (India and abroad). Nobody could balance you upto this time. Your



love is like a secret fire in the wood. I can dare say, she (Revered Master's wife) should have the experience: nobody can love her more than you do and have done in the past. Her relatives will go away leaving her after some time: this is my unshakeable experience. (Pause) when Lord Krishna was sitting before you (Ram Chandra), you played the part well. It was the necessity at that time. We were there to save you. No one can deny that He (Lord Krishna) is a very big authority. We have snatched a part of what was being given to you (to be kept reserved for you to have at the appropriate time after physical dissolution). You did very well that you opened up yourself, and stretched yourself in every particle of God's worlds. That was the only method to save your organic existence. We were very happy to witness this acute weapon of wisdom-this weapon of acute wisdom and understanding. The method should be noted down with reference to circumstances in the confidential diary."

Revered Master's dictation addressed to M1: "There could have been no better method to save (the physical organism). How nice that it hit the insight of dear Ram Chandra. One great problem is that such marvels are coming to happen through him step after step that even I am unable to hold myself (in proper balance). There is an occurrence just today: When I was upset, he immediately came up close to me. I cannot say why I found myself settled on his being close to me. This was something on account of which I came up with a perfectly open heart; and Lord Krishna too could not remain within holds and bounds."

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji continued: "These things are pleasing to me so much, that I too could not restrain myself. As I have said, I will transfer what I have after Bhandara. If you (Ram Chandra) go deep into yourself, you will find one and the same in perfect harmony. These powers are being bestowed on you for the work after your life. Everybody (elder sages and incarnations of yore) is going to transfer powers to you, though we are checking them from doing that (immediately). Had not your Guru structured you to be of this capacity, you would have gone from the world by now. So man powers cannot reside in the human body. You are something else, about which we

do not want to disclose in our life time. If we develop a little the powers that have been bestowed to you and to you alone, nobody – I mean the high-level sages. Can stand (in comparison to you). Having regard to the powers you enjoy, this (problem before us) is a very petty matter. The powers are destructive ones. The question arises why we do not develop them! The answer is that you are a married householder; those (destructive) powers will all be in working order after your life. We have not yet used our special powers in (respect of) your work. We are only trying to mend the way; weapon comes in last. This is the order of your Guru; otherwise I would have thrown them altogether in some gloomy dungeon – I mean the hell. But still, some people will go towards it. I wanted to take those persons under destruction, who have poisoned your other's brain (Lalaji Saheb's wife), but your Guru has refused (such a course of action). I will tell you all when you reach Fatehgarh: keep the strongest man with you when you go there. The situation, moment to moment, will be coming to your knowledge. Everybody will be made bereft of spiritual effect before you are proclaimed at our Lord's place; and it will be the duty of your brethren, sitting here (M1 and R2) to check everybody who thinks himself extraordinarily favoured by Nature.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji (Time 11.40 A.M.): “Lord Krishna is waiting for your success. Call Him if need arises; but only in a very special case.”

Revered Master defined and explained certain technical terms, commonly used in the context of spiritual theory and practice:

1. Peace (Shanti): Perfect peace requires that taunts and rebukes, fouling up and fisticuffs, received from others, flow down like water from the smooth surface of an inverted jar without causing any effect on it. Tolerance under compulsion does not fall under this definition. In the initial stages, compulsion is needed for habit-formation.
2. Conjugation (Wasl): It is there, when all longing and quarreling (outburst) is over: neither intense desire for togetherness nor pangs of separation should remain.

However, if somebody adopts this in the beginning, it will be wholly wrong and misleading. The passion should be only for the union; that is the aspirant devotee's job; and that remains God's Grace, viz. to rid the devotee of longing and quarrel (outburst). Spirituality is the name of lightness: that is to put it briefly in a single word, or else I have given its perfect definition in my (dictated notes (already) somewhere).

3. Passion/Longing (Jazb): "It is of two kinds: lower and higher. In case of the lower level of passion, there is continual aggravation of the mental tendency: this is more beneficial in the initial stage. The higher form of passion is that whose one illustration has been cited yesterday by Swami Vivekananda Ji, viz. 'Your love is like a secret fire in the wood.' That is to say, inward smouldering in love would continue, without any aggravation of the heart being created. The real meaning of passion (Jazb) is attachment. The amount of attachment can be said to increase in proportion to the intensity of the relationship of conjointment (Nisbat).
4. Good conduct on the way to God-Realization (Sulook): In the first (Superb) form of it, everything, I mean concerning one's own condition, appears to be in a sleeping state. Then there are second rate forms of it. The first rate conduct on the way to God – Realization is rare to find.
5. Faith/Conviction (Aitqad) : Firmness of faith is there when one's link with Him (God) is established so as to be never diverted even to the extent of finding oneself beyond control with respect to do that (diverting of faith). Achieving such conviction/faith should be attempted.
6. Dependence/Faith (Bharosa): Briefly it is having/finding at any time nobody except He (God), nor having/finding any help other than His to depend on.
7. Thankfulness/Gratitude (Shukr): To remain happy under all circumstances is called thankfulness.
8. Gratitude/Obligation (Ehsaan): This is the condition wherein one is never oblivious of His remembrance, and considers Him alone every moment as one's own. He means God: worldly obligation is not meant (here).

9. Contentment/Patience (Sabr): To be contented under all conditions, without the thought of something better occurring to one's mind.
10. Craving (Talab): Nothing except God is to be craved for.
11. Longing/Pining (Tadap): This means restlessness; and it reaches upto the reality of love. This remains (verbal) meaning; and now listen to its definition: real longing is there when no current except that would arise in the heart.
12. World (Duniya): It is that wherein everybody desires one's recompense.
13. Transcendence/Hereafter (Ugba): It is where nobody has to do anything with anybody else, i.e. no attachment is felt (with others). Swami Vivekananda Ji explained: "Interdependence is the idea of our Lord as regards the world. The other world (hereafter/transcendence) comes just in opposition to that. Heaven is nothing but the condition of being devoid of these two things. Heaven means the condition itself."

Revered Master: "Now dear M1, note down a (Persian) couplet from me: 'Heaven is where no trouble remains; when nobody has anything to do with anybody else.'"

Swami Vivekananda Ji gave some more definitions and explanations:

14. Maya: It is nothing but the dark side of God

15. Purusha: It is the bright side (of God)

"Think of the burning point of a lamp as Purusha, and shedding light as Maya. You swim across this light to reach the burning point. Where the luster ends, there the darkness prevails, making our horizon. It is called a gross state of Maya, I mean, where the light reaches in points and not in the shedding way. People are generally enveloped in this part of the big circle. Guru brings light from the burning point to this circle, making it all the same in the long run. The question arises, where from the Guru brings such light when he is born in the third circle of darkness. The answer is, as the word (Guru) itself suggests, that he is always near and nearer to the burning point, wherefrom he takes up light directly and leaves the veil behind it in utter darkness."

[In Sanskrit, the word Guru means that which removes darkness: Gu=darkness; Ru=that which removes.]

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I am so much pleased with Ram Chandra that I have no adequate words to say in his praise. Swim and swim in real spirituality! Just swim and swim across in the ocean of spirituality! That is my prayer and blessing. It is bound to come true and be fulfilled.”

16-3-1945

Revered Master’s dictation.. addressed to M1: “Just a little earlier, one more act has come to be committed by him (Ram Chandra). Swami Vivekananda Ji was desirous of seeing him (Ram Chandra) close to him (Swami Ji), in his exact present forum. The same thing immediately came to happen (automatically) on the part of dear Ram Chandra. My purpose in pointing out such things (again and again) is just that people copy the (example of) perfect affinity; and that they be confronted off and on with these illustrations (of seemingly minor, but very significant acts of the heart-gripping etiquette) in order to create fondness (of the right sort) in them as well.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “You (Ram Chandra) are setting an example for the existing people in society, and also for those coming after you (in the future). This-I mean hitting correctly at the exact point – is very difficult. How to acquire this ability is the question. It is very difficult. How to acquire this ability is the question. It is very difficult to answer in one word. Anyway, let me try to sum it up – ‘Love of Guru to the extreme.’”

Revered Master: “Look M1, dear Ram Chandra had acquired perfect affinity with me already: now the state of his relationship with revered Swami Ji has come to the same.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “The reason is that you (Ram Chandra) took both of us in a whirl.”

17-3-1945

Dictation from Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu: "I have bestowed just now (on Ram Chandra) that power which was in me. Since your Guru and Swami Vivekananda Ji are busy, I considered it my duty to come to you, so that you do not feel yourself to be alone. I also remain present. You do not feel (my presence) because your attention remains directed to the two (of them). You will remember the incident of yesternight: it was just my work to make you excited for one minute at the impertinence of that fellow. (The previous night B2 had said that he had derived no benefit from a group sitting conducted by me (Ram Chandra); and that to worship Guru as God touched the boundary of blasphemy; that his (B2) mind remained clean and happy for some time on going away from my place after group sitting, but confusion appeared again; that it was not spirituality but mesmerism; that as against this he felt happier in reading Ramayana, which happens to be the essence of Vedas and Scriptures; and so on.) you (Ram Chandra) have no inkling of your state. If you come to know it, your soul will certainly take flight (away from the body). I did not find this thing in anybody, nor could come across a heart (like yours) capable of containing such a (big) treasure. This is all (due to) your Revered Master's grace: such a reverence-worthy Personality never happened to come down (on earth). I am stating one thing out of my experience, viz. those deserving of this science (Yoga) in the real sense, will be very scarce to find; and that wherever persons of real caliber and deservingness be available, their condition has to be one of balance from the very beginning. That is the symptom to recognize them. This science is getting lost; and it has already got lost to a large extent. Now, Nature has the intention in favour of establishing it. Hereafter the work of Swami Vivekananda Ji will start: thereafter is my turn. Other reverence-worthy elders are also waiting. When you went to Cape Comorin, you found the place fine and pleasing. That place appeared very much to

my liking as well; and I had made it full of effect. There was (actually) no work (to be done) at Cap Comorin: my purpose was only that you give a shine to what I had established. That was why your Revered Master and other elders of the higher world issued orders to you. Now that effect can never wane.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “It is a big soul. Blessings are always pouring on you. I call him a fortunate being who keeps company with you. The time is worth remembering. Happy are those who avail of it. We as well as Ji are busy all among at Fatehgarh. I have allotted duties. Guests will be pouring in this year. There is much activity at K... friends dreaming of their success in Bhandara, are gathering around. They are trying their level best for succession at Bhadara. There are so many powers at your back. They have no backing.”

Revered Master: “I went to Fatehgarh. Swami Vivekananda Ji never left the place ever since having taken up the work. J1 is also busy. (Pause) So long as an aspirant does not suffer a downfall in honesty (of belief) and firmness of faith remains, there can be no effect of dirt (unclean surroundings). Someone stuffing through external force is another matter. However, right faith is something that purges off even that, and does not allow it to have effect. Both the example are here; one is that of dear Ram Chandra, and the other of B2. Offer congratulations to M1 that I have made his disciple M2 of B.. cross a stage: I have perfected his organic region. The mental (natural) inclination towards the cosmic region has not yet arisen.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “We have completed one part of our work. Lord Gauranga (Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu) is with me: he is taking interest in our work. He has (also sworn not to go to the Higher World until the work is over. We are all here now. We have just received orders from Lord Krishna to use His weapon in the last measure. One of us is going to J... Your Guru has taken up the duty at J..., leaving J1 here at Fatehgarh.”

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji, concerning M1 (Time 11.20 A.M.): “You have done wonders this time; but to give power two or more sittings will be needed. If he

does not take it ill, I advise him (M) to let it remain open. The method is that he should meditate with the thought that the underlying veil has been chipped off altogether. It is only in an infancy state and requires development. If possible, he should take butter or ghee for three days continually according to his digestive capacity. Boiled food with pepper and without any other spices will be very useful during this time. Tamarind, pumpkins and ripe tomatoes are useful.

Revered Master's dictation: "Your (Ram Chandra) appearance came to my vision one, as a result of my prayer, offered to Him (God) for a person capable of becoming my successor-representative, to be made available to me. On having that vision of our countenance, I exercised attraction towards me on you. This happened much earlier than your actual coming to me. I had delayed to initiate you so that you undergo a little more smouldering. I was fully convinced that you were sure to come to me; but I had started changing just there and then. The notes that I have given about you previously mean that in spite of all this I continually maintained my vigil; and remained even then tallying my own experience with that of my Revered Master throughout. One reason for these precautions happened to be my concern about your prosperous family background as well. As such I kept a watch on you at each step (and every moment)."

Revered Master's dictation later, addressed to M1 and R2: "What has struck dear Ram Chandra's mind was difficult to occur to persons of very high caliber. I can say that this technique did not come to anybody's comprehension – I am referring to elder sages of recent times. Otherwise there is nothing altogether new about it.

The difficulty was that when he (Ram Chandra) used to depute his astral body (for some work), or you people (M1 and R2) do that, it (astral body) did not work well, and the need for transmission still remained. Now this shortcoming has been corrected. The technique consists in getting the astral body imbued with life, on being taken out (for being deputed to do some specified work). The movement (or life in the astral body) will be immediately felt; and then it may be yoked to the work in hand, giving it (astral



body) some more special power needed for the specific job. (Pause) I alone know his (Ram Chandra) merits well; and he (alone knows) mine. It is in imitation of liberated souls, so to say.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Now I am taking work from you (Ram Chandra). Your vital body (Pranamaya Kosha) is before me. The world will remember you. I have assigned you a duty.”

Sri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu: “Such a person did not appear in my institution. My longing remained just unfulfilled.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “The invention is not of an extraordinary character. In days long gone by there was a Hindu sage in India. He had discovered this method. (Pause) You are working side by side with me and I am taking work from you. Another wonderful discovery! Now you are working without any exertion on your brain. I like to keep you along all the time.”

Sage Agastya: “I have also got the news of the discovery (imparting vitality to the astral body). This is a good innovation. I have a lot of knowledge with me. Let the opportunity arrive: I shall reveal all. This opportunity will arrive after your life, when you will be able to work freely. Haste and delay is just in your hands. At this time many seers – I mean Hindu Rishis – admiring you.”

Lord Krishna: “I am replying to his (M1) question. A special power descends from Nature for specific work; and functions concealed in some special being, whose shape is of an incarnation. In such an eventuality, powers of Nature start working in tune with the commands of such a person: those powers can do nothing by themselves.

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “You have had dictation from Lord Krishna. Now comes my turn. You are doing wonders here (Fatehgarh) as well. The same faculty, that you possess, is working here with me in your astral body. You have come here with full powers – another wonder – as if you are here yourself. Your brain now begins to work in

the astral body. When you return, take all these things with you.”

The sage of Ceylon (Time 10.30 P.M.): “What are the dates of your annual function? (The dates were given). I have received orders from Lord Krishna to remain with you during Bhandara. Of my own accord, I shall take up the duty one day earlier.”

Sage Agastya (Time 11.30 P.M.): “I have just now received orders to be with you during Bhandara. As such, I shall do accordingly. This is the first occasion that I am to be away from my post.”

19-3-1945

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I have issued orders to all the venerable sages of ancient India to remain with you during Bhandara. Rishi Agastya is one of them. I am issuing orders to Maharshi Atri just now. He will speak to you after some time.”

Sage Atri Ji: “To me orders have just arrived to be with you. As such I shall be there on those Dates.” (Date were given)

Guardian (Abdal) of Mathura (Time 12.45 P.M. after receiving transmission on his request): “Ah! This perfection, I never came across anywhere else. My heart feels inclined to remain just serving you all of my life. I have met many elder sages of high caliber; but excepting one, who visited Mathura at the time of Swami Dayananda’s birth centenary (Revered Lalaji Saheb), this transmission could not be seen anywhere, nor could such perfection be available. My Revered Spiritual Guide was living at the time and had met that great sage and had felt fulfilled.” On being told that the same Great Personality was my Master, the Abdal continued: “He (Ram Chandra) is just the replica of the same Great Personality. I was not conscious of this earlier. What more for me to say!”

Revered Master’s dictation, addressed to MI: “How much to praise dear Ram Chandra!

If he had attempted to claim me down at this time, I would have dealt punishment to him. To calm me down at other occasions was proper, but not on this occasion. Just see, dear M1, how delicate his position becomes. Just now I had created irritation intentionally; and this was a test for him; otherwise, how can it be possible for me to bypass his words. If somebody is considered as deserving high punishment., it is duty as well to shower extreme grace on him. Can it be possible to come across such an example! Not at all. I promise that whatever thought happens to arise in him, I shall get just that fulfilled: there is to be no question of right and wrong. The extreme punishment that I had selected for him, was never thought of for anybody. He anyway came successfully out of the test; as such, the above-quoted is here for him. Successor-representativeship is not a child's play! I never tested anybody like this, because I knew that nobody could measure equal to it. Since such punishment was there, now reward, far higher in proportion, is also there! If I do not do that, I will be guilty of shirking justice. The person for whose little mistake, God forbid if it had got committed, I had intended to hurl total annihilation, now has to be rewarded in equal proportion (in the reverse direction). My opinion, therefore, is that he shall act quite independently, particularly on such an occasion. He did a superb performance: When I forced him to ask for something, he begged for this: 'So long as the world exists, my Lord's name should shine like the sun.' I again promise for the future that whatever he asks for (or desires), that same shall be granted. When I was poised to hurl such a calamity on my beloved one, in case an error had been committed by him, there remains no reason why I do not bestow these words on him. This was the last test for him. I claim that an identical affinity never developed in anybody to this day. Now I permit him to reduce irritation that may ever develop in me, to the extent of his liking. Dear M1, you have no inkling as to what I have bestowed on him just now. Just consider it the story of crude rice that transpired between Lord Krishna and Sudama."

Sudama, an old friend of Lord Krishna, forced by his adversity, went to seek succour from his old friend of student life, on the insistence of his wife, who could manage only

a few handfuls of crude rice, borrowed from a neighbor, to be taken as a present to the old friend – Krishna – who was now the great king. Lord Krishna received Sudama most honourably and affectionately; and playful at his shyness and hesitation, snatched the present sent to him by His sister-in-law, and started eating handfuls of the uncooked rice. With every handful of rice put in Lord Krishna’s mouth, the kingdom of one world – upper, middle and nether – was going to Sudama’s ownership. Rukmini, Lord Krishna’s principal spouse, restrained Lord Krishna after the third handful, on the plea that she – Rukmini also had a share in that present brought by Sudama. When after a few days, Sudama started back, obviously carrying nothing from Lord Krishna with him, he felt sad and sarcastically blessed (or cursed) that Lord Krishna may also get what he had given Him, whereupon the kingdom of the three worlds was back in its place; and Sudama had only all kinds of worldly prosperity to his astonishment on reaching his home.]

My dear M1, he (Ram Chandra) does not give up subtlety. He has ordered me only what I was desiring. This was not a test for him: I have already ordained in that regard. Dear Ram Chandra, I instruct you that in your life and even thereafter, you should never test anybody in such a severe way. To you M1 also say the same. ‘Tell Revered Master: “Look M1, Ram Chandra has again acted superbly Swami Vivekananda Ji told him out of happiness that this incident will be communicated to Lord Krishna. His intention was to acquaint Lord Krishna with the happy tidings of dear Ram Chandra’s success (in the severe test). He (Ram Chandra) thereupon so nicely requested Swami Ji not to acquaint Lord Krishna with the event, as it would not be nice to tell that their loved one was put to such a severe test, to fail in which would have brought about his destruction. I feel incapable of expressing my heart’s condition at this time. There can be no better respect for one’s guide. Now where from can I get the heart to enable me to ignore (or put aside) what happens to ask for or mention to me. The tests are over. No more now. I have mortgaged myself unto him from today onwards: what more to say! Dar M1, I swear by the name of God that from today I have kept nothing with me; and have just transferred

everything to him, and emptied myself totally. All forms of wealth that may possibly be there, I have bestowed on him. (Pause) He has against worked a marvel. I asked him what more should I give; and he replied: “(Protective) shade of your graceful relationship (Saaya-e-Aatifat), just as it has always been.’ Such an example shall nowhere be available; and it can hardly be expected even in the future. Dear M1, really what had still remained to be given, he has asked for! I have to repeat: this example will not be available again. People ought to learn a lesson.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Our Lord has made you the governing power and kept Himself aloof from the work.”

Rishi Agastya Ji: “I have received the Divine Voice that your Guru has made you the governing power.”

Rishi Atri Ji: “I have got the communication that you are made the governing power.”

Revered Master: “Dear M1, really speaking, I have not left even a seat for myself (anywhere).”

Swami Vivekanand Ji: “I ask you but one thing: when you take up my work, you take yourself as my Lord.”

Revered Master: “What a fine answer he (RamChandra) has given when Swami Ji asked him to consider himself as Swami Ji’s Lord; If a slave be placed on a king’s throne, his status in reality shall remain just that of the slave, even if royal privileges be made available to him.’ This reply has made me as well as Swami Ji immensely happy. Isn’t culture, that belongs to the sphere of respect to the guide!”

20-3-1945

Revered Master’s dictation, addressed to M1 (Noon time): “I have left the Higher World; and have no intention to return there for the whole period of dear Ram Chandra’s life (on earth). Need may be another question; or else it may be from time to time for brief

periods. My stay mostly, now, will be just here. Now I have no right to go to the Higher World, as I have yielded that also to him (Ram Chandra).”

Rishi Agastya Ji: “What I had mentioned last night has been put to effect.”

Rishi Agastya Ji: “What I had mentioned last night has been put to effect.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Our Lord kept nothing for Himself.”

Revered Master: “Dear Ram Chandra has told me one method for my stay there. That method, no doubt, enables me to remain there, but it depends on my sweet will.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I am also thinking of leaving the Higher World for you.”

Sri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu: “I am also of the same opinion, viz. to leave the Higher World. You have no idea about your state. The assembly happens to be pleasing only where the king may happen to be.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Souls are coming to you (Ram Chandra) for this work. We are all leaving the Higher or Brighter World for the purpose, hinted by your Guru; and it is quite possible though not definite, that your life (on earth) be prolonged. These are the new orders, and will take their shape soon. You will have to work day and night with sleep for a few hours only; and I assure you that it will be sufficient to keep up your health. In reality ten minutes of sleep (in twenty four hours) is enough for you. At this stage people have no sleep. Sleeplessness will not tell upon your health.

“There is a great confusion in Manusmriti. You will have to take it up first of all; and then the turn of other Shastras (Scriptures) will come, and last of all, the Vedas. You will have no write commentaries on each subject of different schools of philosophy. You cannot do all the work yourself. You may just listen while somebody reads the books; and if possible somebody else may go on taking down your instructions concerning corrections, otherwise one who reads the books may do this work of writing also. You will leave all this work to go under print after your departure from the world. We will

ourselves arrange (for all this). The sutras (aphorisma) have been defiled by the priests to give supremacy throughout to themselves and their every kith and kin. The science part of the Vedas is not available in India. The Sanskrit grammar has also received the evil touch of the hands of the priests. The Brahma Sutra tells tales of the s-called supremacy of the priests and their class. The ral part of it has been taken away and burnt to ashes. Everywhere you will find the supremacy of the priests and the priestly class alone. The real things have been chewed away. These all are being returned to you, and the very sages who have written will come down for dictation and correction (through you). Orders are being issued. We have proposed punishment for the authors who book the idea of supremacy in a prejudiced way. They will be reborn and destroyed. I take the example of Patanjali. His idea was to bring the philosophy in a new form. He was a learned one, but was not reading a practical life worth living. People like him were only book-worms. I speak highly of Tilak. Your Guru will give commentary on each subject. This is the turning point of your (Man's) spiritual history. I mean to say that you have been chained to some other work also. I am going to appoint a sage whose only work will be to draw out exhaustion from our brain. I will not allow you more than two hours of sleep, three hours in a very rare case. Practically speaking you need no rest. Your soul has already left and severed the connection from the body. My experience during the existing work is that you will have to create a new world. (Pause) sluggish as they (K... people) are, activities have been taken away from the persons whom they so much revere and esteem; and their so-called masters have become dull. Take the example of S1. He too is the victim of N1. I guarantee, nobody in the world can correct them accept you. They (N1 etc.) have sufficient will power and have directed it to delude (others) with will force, making a deep impression upon their brains and hearts. It is not a child's play to remove it at a single glance now. One more thing was done to them; it runs that a heavy veil of darkness was thrust upon them. Nobody but you could escape from it (or some such person as protected specially somewhere). Take the case of M1. His will has been weakened by the same person who is under destruction now. He could not do more

than this, but adopted means to carry it out. I mean the programme he drew up in his inner faculty or brain. He (N1) did not want to give rise to any of the disciples of our Lord, the Reverd one. The result was that so many thoughts of different hues are still swimming in the brains of your brethren. He (N1) is an open book to me. Take the example of B1. I leave aside M3, who is a good-for-nothing debauche. He did some work, not like Satan, but to spread his supremacy over his (and your) brethren.”

21-3-1945

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “The condition is improving again. I have resolved not to leave you at any moment and want to follow our Lord in this respect.”

Revered Master’s dictation: “I have inspected; and noted myself the situation at Barnai [a village under Shri Babu Ji’s landownership] Your obligations on those people are such a may be difficult to illustrate from amongst (the conduct of) landlords; and you have affection also for them. But the characteristic of the times is such that they do not want to reciprocate.. I have thought of one arrangement viz. you depute L2, who is a good fellow. He is honest, and obliged to you. Moreover, persons belonging to a particular caste who remain close to you, remain sowing thorns (creating troubles) for you; only one person, viz. J4 is an exception to some extent. It is an order from above that these people be totally destroyed at Barnai. I assign this work to M1. Just possible dear Ram Chandra may somewhat relent; as such this alone is considered better (to entrust this work to M1). He (M1) can start this work in accordance to his own sweet will. That remains permanent work for him.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Whatever spoken by our Lord about His love for you is bare truth. He is burning with love for you . I have never come across such an example anywhere throughout my life. People leave their homes for God: He left His home (Real Storehouse) for you. That is the greatest sacrifice ever expected from liberated souls. If I go to express a little further, I can say that you have beaten all the world records in the respect. Love of Radha...”



Revered Master: “Do not write this.”

Lord Krishna: “What Swami Vivekananda Ji has said is literally correct and there is no harm in writing that in the matter of loving, you have surpassed even Radha. The reasons have already been detailed out by your Revered Master in His notes. You are not aware that your love is waxing. Swami Vivekananda Ji was going to dictate these words: “The love of Radha is now at the second place next to yours.’ I permit that there is no harm in writing this when it is like that. I have dictated this English sentence which he (Swami Vivekananda Ji) was going to pronounce.

Deservingness is of two kinds: superb (Uttam) and medium (Madhyam); one form of deservingness is known as low grade (Neecha) also, which consists in selfishness. Superior grade deservingness is there, when one’s beloved burns in the fire of love in his /her remembrance. In case of the medium grade deservingness one burns oneself in the fire of love for the beloved. Nothing to say of the low grade, which is a common affair. One more kind of deservingness can be mentioned, which remains free of all these three (kinds). Such deservingness (Anuttara) is born sometimes quite suddenly after years or say centuries, nay, millennia – which has to parallel. Such a deserving person is born by God’s command. You are the example of it; You are just an illustration of this point. The most inferior sort of deserving person is born by God’s command. You are the example of it: You are just an illustration of this point. The most inferior sort of deservingness is known as despicable (Nikrishta). The never derive any spiritual benefit. The idiot type (Moodha) is not to be counted herein.

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “The definition of the best deservingness, the one above that – given by Lord Krishna, is seldom available. What happens to be the innate condition of such a person is sufficiently well laid down by our Lord in His notes. You are the example of it. Such a deserving person, when born, has connection with a pious soul at its origin, like your Guru..”

Revered Master: “This time will not recur for a very long period now. For this special

period, the proverb applies: “Majnoon made the forest into his home; but I turned my home into a forest’. What is the final destination of love? – Where the mystery is made manifest.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “The condition is improving.”

Revered master’s dictation, addressed to M1. “Just now, at your hint concerning snatching way the illness of the mother of R2, what a nice method has been invented (by Ram Chandra)! That (method consists in separating the subtle body of the ailing person from the gross (physical) body, and putting the illness of the patient in the (subtle) body. The subtle body should not be allowed to enter into the patient’s physical being so long as it is desired to keep the patient free from the illness. The disease is to be kept in the separated subtle body, which is to be returned to the physical being of the individual after such cleaning of the disease. This method is not to be applied to all and sundry again and again. It can be used only at the time of some special need. If this method is needed for a long period of application, the subtle body is to be confined into a circle of thought which should be shattered when the same illness is desired to be returned to the patient again. This method, R2 can apply in case of his mother, if he considers it proper. I had applied this method to dear Ram Chandra, when he had come to me for some time, a few months before my physical veiling. During his illness, I had applied this method to him for several nights continuously.”

22-3-1945

Revered Master: “Today, at 10.20 A.M. I have got a special power entered into you. It was a gift for you from Lord Krishna, kept safe with me (for quite some time).”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Your Guru has given you a power this morning, bestowed as a special gift by Lord Krishna for you and you alone. You cannot transfer it to anybody else during your life-time, you have become quite a changed person now. This kind of power is given to incarnations. As nobody is expected to come in that capacity, you are

in duty bound not to transfer it. You need not transmit to anybody this day. Be cautious to think only of benefit to others in words, needs and even thoughts. There are many more powers in store for you; and these are all as gifts from Lord Krishna. The Super Authority. These (powers) will be given to you by and by. The idea, regarding our present position, is to keep all others (functionaries) under your subjugation. Their reins should always be in your hands.”

23-3-1945 (Time 12.40 P.M.)

Revered Master: “I am coming from Fatehgarh. I am trying.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Our Lord is a bit anxious as to the situation at Fatehgarh. We are trying hard to attain the goal. There is a great difficulty in my way on account of your mother (wife of Revered Lalaji Saheb), for whom there is high esteem. Look here, you need not be puzzled. In the end I will clear away the obstacles, coming on the way, without minding the result, even if it happens otherwise. There are only a few days more for Bhandara of our Lord. There is still time for them to come around your banner. There are a few persons at her house – I call them fools – who misguide her and cause disturbance. What remedy will our Lord propose for them? There are a few elements in your society, which are worth destruction. We will look to it after Bhandara.”

Lord Krishna: “Your Revered Master has put into you a power out of my gifts (to you). At this time a chain of numerous powers has directly descended for you.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Look here, we have stored it for you.”

24-3-1945

Revered Master: “What remains now with me to give (to Ram Chandra)!”

Lord Krishna: “Your Guru has directly prayed for you that He has now nothing with Him to give to you (though still desiring to give more and more). Now the Omnipotent Nature has started waving up; the ocean of Grace is tiding up. The orders are issued that

powers be descending every minute and every second. Your Guide has executed the promise that He will go on structuring (your) heart so as to contain these powers on a permanent basis. So, that is the order, since one like you as lover, and your Respected Guide as bestower, will be scarce to find.”

Revered Master: “The flow from the Ultimate Being has started descending (Time 8.24 P.M.) This promise from the Ultimate Being is for the entire period of your life.”

Lord Krishna: “It is a very auspicious day that your Revered Master has got you initiated by the Ultimate Being directly. This is what is known (in common parlance) as initiation (Beast or Diksha). This is just the first example (of its kind) since the beginning of creation.”

Radha Ji: “Till now y relationship with you was that of a mother to her son. Now you consider me as your sister. I am also going back with Lord Krishna.”

Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu: “Now I do not find enough courage in me to take work from you. But because of the way in which you have submitted your point, there remains no harm (in work being taken from you by me).”

Revered Master: “Just now the story of Mahmood Ghaznavi and Ayaaz occurred so aptly to our mind. So I also thought it proper to recite this Persian couplet: King Mahmood Ghaznavi, who had been the master of thousands of slaves, was griped by poverty to such an extent as to be reduced to the status of the slave of a slave’. This is my state.

[Reference: page 159, Autobiograph Part II Vol. I, page 159]

Direction initiation is just my method. Earlier it never occurred to anybody’s comprehension; nor was it every put to practice.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I want to play my part just like your Guru. Look here, I am direct line with your Guide. When you find a chance to initiate anybody, have his connection (established) with me also. But this method will be adopted only by you.”

25-3-1945

Revered Master (addressing R2): “Just now, dear Ram Chandra performed a superb wonder. Just this is called hitting at (the exact target). What he did to Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu just now would have been an extreme impertinence if it had not been exactly required (at the moment). May God bless his sensitivity (and experience).”

The connection of S2 with his guide was snapped at 12 P.M. (midnight) and an order for destruction was issued.

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “He (S2) is the root cause of all these evils.” Revered Master’s dictation, addressed to R2 continued: “I have come just now to impart some lesson to you people. An illustration (of exact grasp) is being presented. Dear Ram Chandra had been prohibited to take part in reforming the society (of the disciples and successors of Lalaji Saheb), which has been taken up to by elders (of yore) in their own hands. This was something, that every disciple must most strictly adhere to; but he (Ram Chandra), inspite of my standing orders, did just give an impetus to the concept of his mother (wife of Lalaji Saheb). I think nobody would have dared to do such a thing. What was the point precisely? I (unconsciously) was desiring his (Ram Chandra) assistance in that special work, which was concerning his mother. What I mean (to impart) is that the exact thought according to my (unconscious) desire cropped up in his heart; this is known as (perfect) identity.”

Lord Krishna: “What your Revered Master has dictated about you (RamChanda) is correct. If you had committed an error, it would have been possible that I would have

dealt punishment to you for going against the standing orders of the Master. But your thought hit at the exact point; and that was your Revered Master's precise desire. I felt greatly pleased. In fact He had already tested you; and this was my test of (your perfect) identity. You have come through this as well (perfectly successfully). A such.., a reward is also just here!"

Swami Vivekananda Ji: "We have received the reward for you from Lord Krishna."

Lord Krishna continued dictation: "If at this time, you had not become oriented to your mother, the same punishment, viz. annihilation would have been in store for you, a your Revered Master had fixed (earlier) on your being unsuccessful (to get through the test). May your merits be the subject of hymns and songs like mine!"

Reverend Radha Ji: "You had to pass through such hard tests, as nobody else had to undergo thus far, and the reward that came (to you) could never be obtained by anybody (thus far). You have no consciousness as to what is going on. I have also dealt one test to you!"

Swami Vivekananda Ji: "Radha Ji has tested you just now; and you came out successfully through that as well."

Radha Ji: "My brothe, I have tested you. If you had failed, I would have intended to recommend to Lord Krishna that you be pulled down from your present status. Now, as a reward to this (success in the test) your status has been raised (further up). Now, there will be no test or trial (for you) any more. Rest assured, I will be helping you in every work."

Revered Master (addressing R2): "This test dealt by Radha Ji to dear Ram Chandra was of a very peculiar nature. It could have very scarcely struck the comprehension of anybody. It was just to see what reply he would give to Radha Ji's test being dealt to him; and it came out exactly, word for word, as She desired. That reply was; 'Since you have designated me as your brother, in case I fail to get through your test, shall it sound

nice for you to tell others that your brother failed to get through the test!' This was the hardest test out of all those that have been dealt to dear Ram Chandra upto date.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “On your (humble) prayer (Prarthana) a general order from your Guru is issued at this very moment that nobody shall put you to trial in the future. Rest assured.”

Revered Master (addressing R2): “I have not spared anything wherein full mastery has not been granted to dear Ram Chandra... The way in which he had submitted his (humble) prayer to me, was not a matter of ordinary intelligence. I very much liked that style (of submission); and as a reward just for that, issued a declaration prohibiting anymore test being dealt to him by anybody; and his prayer I have communicated to the Ultimate Being. The words of his prayer were (exactly) these: ‘I am after all human: there can be mistakes at any and every step. It was just your Lordship’s kind grace that I remained coming out successfully thus far through the tests. Now my heart just trembles at the thought of the tests. I do not have the strength to pass through tests. If, God forbid, I happen to fail in some such test! – I have nothing further to say.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I had a talk with Mahatma Gautam Buddha (just now) concerning you. The difficulties that Lord Buddha’s religion has almost been uprooted in India. I am requiring just this from this moment onwards, that all religions, I mean the grains of spirituality in them, be absorbed in you. The service you are rendering in this regard (to spirituality) is making much impression on me (and all revered elders).

“Happy news! Lord Krishna is leaving the Brighter World for three days during Bhandara. You should be very alert during that time. This is happening for the first time in the spiritual history of the world. Radha Ji will accompany Lord Krishna. Furthermore, Nature itself, I mean God, is helping you.”

Revered Master: “You have really made my name alive. Nobody else could have come successfully through these tests. This (perfect) identity of mine (with you) is an object of

great admiration (among revered elders). And why would it not be like that; I am present in every hair-root of your body. Look here R2, I have put into him one more power out of the gifts of Lord Krishna, at 9.50 P.M.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I have just received the news from Lord Krishna that you have been given the post of ‘maker of the world’. Your Guru will explain it. Look here, it is not an ordinary post. Nobody in the world could ever get it. This is a reward for you from Lord Krishna in lieu of your coming out successfully from the tests. Radha Ji is going a long way (for you) in lieu of her test. Now the powers of Nature (Shaktis), which issued forth for the first time (at the start of creation), will work under your directly – I mean Brahma (creator), Vishnu (preserver) and Mahesh (destroyer). The same duty you will carry out after your life (in the physical form). One thing more is given to you as reward from Radha Ji, that after leaving the body, you will not have to wait for resurrection but will go directly to the Ultimate Being, viz. the Self, as you call it. This is an impossibility which has been made possible for you by Lord Krishna and Radha Ji. Your way has been made smooth, so as to go directly after leaving your body. Your causal body has been already broken, as your Guru said somewhere in His notes. That was in reality the foundation laid down by your Guru for the present stage, being enjoyed by you.”

Revered Master: “Dear Ram Chandra, I had come to know all these matters during my life-time, as to what was in store for you; and I have the knowledge of what is to come still ahead as well.”

Lord Krishna: “I have felt immensely pleased at this culture (of yours) not to abandon your Guide. This is no a mistake, but a sort of test even, so to say; and it happens to be, by itself, an examination of your impulses. This thing has made me very happy. The value of the Guru is to be learnt by anybody from you; and it is just proper that one who is really a lover can have nobody except the beloved in his view, and that alone remains everything to the (real) lover. This example shall be scarce to find: it rather ought to be



said that (such an example) cannot be available (anywhere else)”

The point of conversation (on my part) was this: “The highest reward to me happens to be that our Revered Master remains with me, and having Him in m vision remains my good fortune. What more is there for me to crave for. ‘For one who suffers from the pangs of love, there is no medicine except the sight of the beloved’ (a Persian half-couplet from Hafiz).

26-3-1945

Revered Master: “One more power (Shakti) out of the gifts of Lord Krishna has been penetrated at 10.20 A.M.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “The condition of Fatehgarh is taking a serious turn. We are avoiding the idea of destruction for the time being. I am in a fix as to what is to be done. The most stubborn people have gathered here, destroying our Lord’s work. That constitutes the prophesy for their resurrection. Most of us have left the Higher World for this very work.”

Revered Master: “To consider oneself to be weak – this is a matter of extreme weakness.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “A power is approaching us directly for our work. I referred the suggestion, submitted by you, to Lord Krishna. The idea is preferably good. You and your assistants are going to Bhandara with full powers. If more power be needed, you can ask for it any time. We will make it at once available for your use. Do not allow an weakness to creep into you and your assistants. The power has started working now (Time 4.45 P.M.).”

Revered Master: “B1 has taken away all the maps I prepared. The suggestion you submitted to Swami Vivekananda Ji on his command has been accepted. The power has started and those people are now in the orbit of destruction. The suggestion was to the

effect that the people who are to come in opposition after Bhandara, may be taken for destructions just from now on. You recommended your mother (wife of Revered Lalaji Saheb) to be left aside under every circumstance. You had certainly added the provision that the suggestion was to be put to effect if it was proper and productive of good. As such, those who have been taken in the orbit of destruction till now are R7 and M10., (the order concerning R7 was rescinded at 7 P.M. on 3-4-1945). The action against them has started directly from the Ultimate Being. You people do not need to work for the destruction of these people. This power will return only after having completed the destruction of these persons. Just possible some more people may come into the fold of this action, which has started already. I have myself snapped the connection of these two persons; you need do nothing in this regard. I give you the right to mention to me the person, whosoever, whose destruction you consider necessary during the period for the annual function; or you may submit to that power as well (directly). Remember, however, not to act on the advice of somebody else. In case my special people. Including M1, II i.e. Lalloo and R2, feel trouble from someone, they can so tell me by way of prayer; but this weapon is not to be used in quick succession.”

Revered Master’s dictation continued: “I have dealt such stiff punishment to N1 as to make him remember (his sins). The punishment is that he shall go to hell together with his brain, i.e. the sensitive part of it. What a confusion has been caused to my Satsang! My sacrifices were not such as to deserve this fate!”

Revered Master later explained; “The occurrence of a practican’s downfall can be there upto the status of Maha-parshad (Ghous-ul-Azam), but in general this cannot happen. Snatching away (the spiritual status) can also be effected. This however, can be done by someone who has gone beyond the status of Ghouse-ul-Aazam; and even in that state has done sufficient swimming, having established connection with the Ultimate Being. The person possessing this state can never be deprived of (his spiritual condition); on the other hand, the person trying to snatch away his/her spiritual condition is oneself to slip down into it. This is to say that one who tries to snatch off the spiritual condition of that

great personality, without an indication (of willingness) from that same great personality, is bound to lose his own capacity automatically to be included into it (into the capacity of the great personality) (Pause) I have surrendered S2 to the destructive power that has descended from the Ultimate Being for this work (Time 7.10 P.M) Now, withdraw your subtle body from there; You have no need to touch (this case) at all. (Pause) A1, N1 and M3 are also surrendered to the same power (Time 7.20 P.M.) The rest will be looked into after Bhandara. Now, all of you people stand away from this job with clean hands.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I do not find such an example of love, as set before you all by our Lord. He wanted destruction of the above mentioned persons with little or no pain (being caused to them). When the power descended for the destruction of some persons, their hearts began to burn. Our Lord then sprinkled coolness of water on them so as to avoid unnecessary trouble for them, which comes to a person on his death-bed. He is repeating the same method after short intervals.” He is repeating the same method after short intervals.” Revered Master gave a prescription for some ailments of R2, applicable to other cases with appropriate modifications to suit special requirements.

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “A few more persons are coming rapidly under destruction. I will let you know the names afterwards. I put one person (C1), whom our lord does not want to name, under destruction; and the work commenced, I am keeping off the other one(S1) for the time being. The vibration is now taking place in the Ultimate Being Itself: an order is coming soon. Look, here is the order that all the disciples of N1 without measure should be annihilated. I am leaving those persons who have no faith in him. Here is the (next) order: all the persons attached to C1 should be served with a warning in Bhandara first. Otherwise they will meet the same fate (time 9.09 P.M.) We have been waiting so long for their coming to the right path under your banner.” When these orders arrived. Revered Master happened to be just here. He exclaimed: “A great calamity is under way”; and immediately went away.

Swami Vivekananda Ji informed (Time 9.14 P.M.): “Orders have got amended by our

Lord to the extent that the disciples of N1 should be first warned, and then as a last remedy be surrendered to destruction, for which orders have already been received. The Ultimate Being is itself moving towards destruction. You are the governing authority now: I have to render only one advice to you; 'do what you intend, but not as other say'. I assure you that your very thought, intended for somebody's destruction or otherwise, will bring down the power of the Ultimate Being for the purpose. The same is happening here. I assure you that your very thought, intended for somebody's destruction or otherwise, will bring down the power of the Ultimate Being for the purpose. The same is happening here. I assure you again that whatever you intend or want to do, will be incumbent upon us. 'Look here, you are the governing agency. You have prayed to your Guru just now that you may follow the intention of our Lord. The reply is coming from Lord Krishna. Wait!'"

Reverend Lord Krishna: "Your prayer is granted: just this will be happening in the future."

Swami Vivekananda Ji: "I tell you the secret of your present condition: 'Whatever you may say in any form –whether prayer or otherwise – will be accepted by God almighty!'"

Reveed Master (addressing R2): "How much to praise the intelligence and comprehension of dear Ram Chandra! He offered a prayer, exactly as I wanted."

Swami Vivekananda Ji: "Your prayer has reached the zenith; and the response is coming from Lord Krishna directly."

Revered Master: "My heart is leaping up with joy at this time. May God ordaint thus that his (Ram Chandra) successors too make his name immortal like mine; and his merits be remembered in hymns (for ever). So long as the world lasts, his name be shining like the moon in full splendor. His progeny be good. For his existing progeny, I pray for both their spiritual and their wordly prosperity. May spirituality never forsake his home; and such personalities may come out of it, as may make our names immortal. His hardships

be cased ad Grace may make our names immortal. His hardships be eased and Grace may descend on him day by day, minute by minute, moment to moment, ever so to say. His friends be happy; and his enemies be vanquished. One thing more I say; and be it exactly like that; whichever ground and whatever place he may happen to tread, ma it become full of fragrance. Wherever he may happen to tread, may it become full of fragrance. Wherever he may happen to pass, his domain be established; and hemay return from there having fixed his impression. Whoever happens to be in his company, be prosperous and never come across poverty. Have trust that all these things have come into effect; and the future shall come to be just like this. These blessings of mine are from the status of the Ultimate Being and cannot go vain.

Revered Master: “Just now an anecdote has flashed into my memory, which is akin to the state of Ram Chandra. When Majnoon (legendary Love of Laila in Arabian mythology) went to Kaaba (holiest Muslim shrine in Arabia), he prayed to God that his beloved Laila be never away from his mind. The story may be true or false. That is immaterial; the main purpose concerns the expression of the sentiment.”

One more power out of the gifts of Lord Krishna was absorbed at 11.15 A.M.

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “We have passed the night smoothly. The anxiety recurred again since this morning. Our Lord remained busy throughout. M1 must be informed about the situation. As our Lord has appointed him as your secretary, all writings (dictation etc.,) should be referred to him. We are waiting for you. I have taken a few more persons for destruction. Names will be coming to you afterwards. (Pause) Alright, I am leaving M9 in accordance with our request, but only for the time being. If he does not come round, he will meet the same fate. The person you neglected, has poisoned your mother’s (wife of Revered Lalaji Saheb) brain to a greater extent. He is one of the slaves of A1, for whom the punishment under the scheme of destruction is certain. Whoever puts obstacles in my way, even if it happens to be you (Ram Chandra), whom all of us love so much, or anybody else, will meet the same fate. Never mind whether it is your aunt (wife

of R1) or your mother. I will not hesitate even to take the strongest action against our Lord's home if I find any clue to the contrary. I will not listen to you any further. I say again. I will pull down the earth itself. Do not suggest anything to me now. As soon as you reach Fatehgarh, open yourself to your mother freely and tell her that the will of our Lord must come to pass; and that if she or anybody else would resist you to abide by our Lord's orders, resurrection will be the result. Make your heart like mine this time; and not that of your Guru. You are meddling with God's work. I excuse you this time. On your suggestion to leave M9, I flew into a rage. You are worthy of being excused also, for the reason that you have a great regard for your mother's house and the relatives of your Revered Master. There was no selfish motive of yours. I am rejoiced at your submissive way of giving suggestion. You have really surrendered yourself completely to me together with our Lord. Think that, if I do anything wrong to you, I am doing it to myself."

Dictation from J1: "Dear brother, you have done very well here, to save M9. I did not have the courage to say anything."

Swami Vivekananda Ji's instructions continued: "We have pondered over the matter, and arrived at the conclusion that it is your mother who has become the instrument of resistance to our work. (Pause) I like the swastika put at the top of your declaration; and the rising sun on the bottom side. I got the swastika marked with red ink in the middle of it in the circle, and the four sides also dotted with red ink. The meaning is clear (to you) now. It means the destruction in the middle and at the end (on all four sides). The rising sun means that our Lord gave birth to the new system called 'Sahaj Marga' alias 'Satpad Panth'. In the future this will be the emblem of your Satsang, I mean: the rising sun on the top, and the swastika with red lines and circle at the bottom, to indicate the history of your Satsang, dotted with blood (destruction). (Pause) A man who thinks himself to be a master at heart, and his disciples as his subordinates, commits a wrong (action), as Atman (soul) is in them as well, and hence he (disciple) has equality with this master. Only veils or restrictions are to be broken off; that is the purpose for which the disciple

comes to his master. In a way the master should feel indebted to him (disciple) because he, I mean the disciple, is providing him the opportunity to render services to him (disciple). Such an idea (of masterhood) should entirely vanish from the master's brain. One, who does not abide by this (requirement), does not perform his duties well. Take the example of your Master Mahatma Ram Chandra Ji Maharaj of Fatehgarh. He has set an example in this regard. All of you should always follow Him. Is there any gentleman among you who comes forward and says that he is abiding by his Master's example in this respect? (Pause) There is one more piece of news for you. I have taken a very important person, viz. B1, under destruction. Our Lord is objecting to it. So, I am leaving him for the time being. His condition is that he has no other idea (in his mind) but dominate. He is entirely devoid of spirituality and cherishing hopes of domination. How strange it is – N1, inspite of having an upset brain, cherishes hopes of (winning) dominatio8n for his descendants. He has gone to the extent of wishing that his sons may be worshipped like the idols in the temples. His wife too is following him (with regard to this wish).” (Time 7.08P.M.)

Dictation continued at 8.25 P.M.: “Your mother (wife of Revered Lalaji Saheb) alone is causing all the difficulties we are facing. The matter has taken another serious turn. I want to wipe off the whole calm consisting of all the relatives, near and distant, with wives and children. Only the idea that they have belonged to our Lord is checking me from doing so.”

Revered Master's dictation (Time 9.35 P.M.) :I am at J.. H4 is such a simple boy; but what an expanse of the influence of N1! When you reach Fatehgarh, tell II to wean out H4 at least. This can be possible through a letter also, in case he (II) is unable to attend the annual function.”

Sami Vivekananda Ji: “To speak the truth, Ram Chandra, our Lord's work is going to be a failure. I mean that the success, which I wanted, is not going to attend on us. By success I mean, the through success. It is on account of your mother only. I think, the

days of resurrection are near. I will not leave the work. To the Higher World I will return only after performing total destruction or achieving perfect success! I have made up my mind thus, just now.”

Dictation from J1: “What a terrible happening is taking place here! My mother is not budging even by a millimeter. I have to say this, after all, even though she happened to be my mother. Alright, I am not uttering the idiom as she is an elder, nonetheless. Dear brother, what a strange phenomenon is this: the entire spiritual world is accepting you and my mother stands opposed! The destructional force has descended from Nature and is gaining momentum. See what tyranny has been perpetrated on you people by R1, and for what result!

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Your (Ram Chandra) life is at a stake now. I will not allow you to take food any where except with II. You will not buy anything from the same shop over and over again. Do not leave this job to your servants. When you sleep, just as your Guru has ordained, somebody must wake up and remain alert. People have suspicious about you already, though not yet sure (of your being your Revered Master’s real successor-representative). Wherever you stay, your place must be surrounded by others (responsible for your security). You can not be left alone at any time. A daring heart is necessary for your safety. Another necessary precaution to be taken, is that when you address or conduct group-meditation, somebody must remain behind you, quite alert. You will transmit always with your eyes open during Bhandara. Those who love you need not sit among the crowds for meditation etc.”

Reverend Lord Krishna: “My boomerang will be at your back’ and it will be there during the whole period of the annual function. Have trust: I shall myself remain present there, as I have already stated. Nobody has the stamina to look straight into your face.”

Revered Master: “The precautions, pointed out by Swami Ji, have to be observed. Reverend Lord Krishna Himself will be there to ensure your safety. His boomerang will work at your beck and call. However, you should not take work from it, without getting



clearance from me. Those, who will be on duty for our security, will be amply rewarded, whether they take it just now or after the annual function: that depends on their sweet will.”

28-3-1945

Revered Master’ instruction: “Tell 11 to bring it home to M9 again and once more that if he is not or does not want to be helpful in my work, he should at least stand neutral. This matter is not such as to enable someone standing opposed and yet remaining unharmed.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “The situation improved a little again (Time 9.40 P.M); but you should not consider it to be a firm state, as something or other is occurring up and down throughout since we have taken up this work. The poisoning elements are there in the house of our Lord as well. There are certain people at Fatehgarh too, who do not want your supremacy or upper hand in any work of our Lord. (Pause) The condition improved a bit more (Time 10.45 P.M.) I want now to obliterate the whole family of the Satan (N1), leaving that of our Lord aside.”

On hearing this, I was on the point of flowing into the current of anger descending all around in a downpour, when Swami Vivekananda Ji and Revered Master advised me as following:

Revered Master: “I have now tendered my permission to most respected Swami Ji. You too should desist from recommending the case of anybody (to him).

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Heaps of bones you will find everywhere; the matter has reached its climax. I am burning with rage now. You keep yourself aloof from it (the current of rage). The reason is that when the higher authority among us himself moves to the point of destruction, and especially you, then we will have to leave all work before us, and engage ourselves to that and that (destruction) alone.”

Revered Master: “On listening to the letter from M1, I asked dear Ram Chandra as to

what I should do now. He replied with extreme refinement of culture: “I have no intelligence to tender any advice to you, my Lord, but I have read in some book somewhere. If at first you do not succeed, try and try again!’ There can never be any reply, better than this. I have felt outside myself with joy. Alas! This acme of intelligence and comprehension! And nobody to appreciate it adequately! I am going to tell Swami Vivekananda Ji just this moment. To tell the truth, this reply has torn asunder my heart. I have now nothing left with me, except blessings, which I give to you; and am going away now.

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I am sending these words to Lord Krishna. Wait for the result”.

Lord Krishna (Time 12.17 P.M.) “Your prayer has been granted by me. I am taking this work in my own hands; and am proceeding to Fatehgarh.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Lord Krishna has taken up the work, we are already doing, in His hands, today at 12.20 P.M. now.”

Revered Master: “The Sudarshan Chakra (boomerang) of Lord Krishna has started circling around (Time 1.48 P.M.)”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: (Time 1.50 P.M.) “The condition has taken a serious turn again. Instructions from Lord Krishna to you are here.”

Lord Krishna: “In case there is no success, even though it is not expected to that extent, I permit you to open that eye of yours, which I had kept open for eighteen days during the Great War (Mahabharat).”

Revered Master: “When such an eventuality does arise, do (have the courtesy to) ask me to be sure. This power has been especially conferred on you; and this is (out of) Lord Krishna’s gift to you. The reference to it is present in my notes. Special power is to be used on a special occasion only.”

Dictation from J1 (Time 2.5 P.M.): “Now I too have lost control. I am giving D2 up for

destruction. I have been working for such a long period; but now I feel angry. I do not recommend even the case of M9. To tell the truth, it is the scene of annihilation. The highest power itself is at work. Nobody has to heart to obstruct it. Respected brother, one advice however, I do tender to you; keep yourself free from anger to the best possible extent. Your status, whatever it is, I know very well. One of the reasons of Revered Maste Lalaji Saheb remaining calm, is that you are not getting angry.”

Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu: “I am a peaceful soul. I never feel angry; and I never like to cause any trouble to anybody. The course of events, however is taking such a turn, and matters are coming to such a pass, that it may happen that I too have to take up the arms.”

Revered Master: “How tyrannical it happens to be that somebody may ask for pardon even when he is not at fault; and yet pardon be not granted to him! Anyway what you did was not a fault. It was just my command. The fault belongs to those, who would not trust even when my reference is put forth. Is not the anecdote of Mira Bai worth being noted: She consumed fatal poison just because she was told that it had been sent to her by Lord Krishna?”

Request from J1: “Disconnect D2 from me just now.” The order was complied with (Time 2.40 P.M.)

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “This is an example of love. I wanted to see Ram Chandra; and he reached there. (Pause) The matter took another serious turn (Time 5.58 P.M.). It is due to the stubborn nature of your mother (wife of Revered Master)”

Exclamation from J1: “Havoic is wrought, Ram Chandra! Your two upsurges (of the heart) have finished the matter. My mother is subject to (Divine) displeasure!”

Revered Master: “This is not your fault. These two upsurges (of the heart) were mine. Tolerance has reached its limit. Lord Krishna has not yet left the field. It was my anger that caused this effect in you.”

Lord Krishna: “I have the condition here carefully. The state Swami Vivekananda Ji (Time 9.15 P.M.): “Lord Krishna is still here (Time 9.20 P.M.).The matter is going from bad to worse (Time 9.25 P.M.) Conditions are not improving. Our Lord now does not want to see the face of the persons trying to usurp the rights given to you by Him. (Time 9.48 P.M.) He is now in rage.”

29-3-1945

Revered Master’s dictation, addressed to R2: “Just now, dear Ram Chandra observed an etiquette that bears no example. He bowed down in obeisance before Swami Vivekananda Ji first of all; and that was proper for him. Then he bowed down before Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu; and when it was my turn, he bowed down in obeisance just before himself. This underlined sentence is impossible to be expressed(adequately) in words. The (noteworthy) special point in it is that he bowed down himself before himself.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “I am going to transfer the highest power to you). Our Lord is checking me from doing so, at this time. I have kept it reserved for you. As soon as you reach the spot, it will be transferred to you instantly. But look here, keep yourself on a ilk diet alone today. You can take fruits, the ripe ones. This is the gift from lord Krishna, stored for you with me. We had a talk with your Revered Master about you regarding will force. Now we have settled to increase it a little more before you go to the spot. The reason is that you have inherited the capacity of irritation from your father. This thing we do not want to remove, for the reasons already given in the notes of our Lord. (Pause) For the satisfaction of R2, I say that it (the highest power) is swimming over the head of Ram Chandra. Press the switch, and it will gush up at once. There will be no delay; only a second’s time to required for it. You (Rambe no delay: only a second’s time is required for it. You (Ram Chandra) are feeling the air of that power. Your Revered Master is of the opinion that it should come down to you gradually so as to make it complete before you actually reach there. I praise your sensitivity that you felt it

instantly. To tell you the truth, every action and thought of ours goes directly into you, first in the shape of vibrations, which is called 'Shruti'; and then come the words. In the ancient times, the sages of our motherland used to catch 'Shruti' only, but your case is different. You catch both things (vibratin and word)together – I mean with a very short interval between them. This is the demand of time. Nature is going that way. This is quite a new method according to the demands of time. People have now grown weaker due to keeping themselves aloof from strict observance of Brahamacharya Ashram (celibate period of life-first twenty five years, devoted to studies). The system has been long forgotten now. You will bring forth (the new technique fully) probably after your life through your successor. You will carry on this work that has been started here, along with your successor, when you depart from this world. (Pause). There is a great bustle now at Fatehgarh. Thos who are entertaining the idea of dominations, without doubt, whether it may be B1 or anybody else.... (Pause, leaving the sentence incomplete). Our Lord is checking me to complete the sentence by adding a few words. The 'Shruti' (in the form of vibration) is now coming (to you) directly from the very source through us.”

Revered Master: “This status that is your fortune just now! – people shall just lament. Tell these unfortunate ones! – their eyes have not yet opened. They have no inkling even about themselves! – as to what is happening; and what is about to happen! The world will weep for you some time. What I mean to say is that if people look to the direction of the wind blowing, be attentive to its pleasantness and provide accommodation to its expansion; then what I was just going to express can come to light. I have cast light on this subject somewherein m notes. The powers are all coming down. The elder sages are setting up their residence just here. Swami Vivekananda Ji is leaving his place (in the Higher World, for good).

Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu has the same idea. Mahatma Gautam Buddha is turning his vision to focus it on you. Just possible, you may have to surrender the orders, received directly, to some elder master or other.”

Swamy Vivekananda Ji: “We have renounced the Brighter World for your sake.”

Revered Master (Time 10.05 A.M.): “This order has just been issued. A profuse chain (of gifts) from Nature has descended for you. What I had mentioned (to you) at the time of direct initiation, shall remain flowing continually. What I have mentioned just now is in addition (to that)”

Sri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu: “I too have left my post (in the Higher World) Going there off and on, or at the time of need, is another matter. I have received orders just now. Top-ranking masters of you are all coming down. Lord Gautam Buddha too is leaving his position.,

Reverend Lord Krishna: “Your prayer concerning the house being set in order is granted to this extent that those whose who defame your Revered Master, themselves get obliterated. This too can be the meaning of the house being set to order.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Good prayer and good reply!”

Lord Gautam Buddha: “My method of training was the same as that of your Revered Master. It is a very ancient method. People have forgotten it.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Another serious trend this moment! (Time 10.44 A.M.) Inviting Lord Krishna! (Pause) Look here, Ram Chandra, you are now in our midst. Our Lord is coming to transfer a very great power (to you). He has ordered you to take a little yoghurt (curd) at this time. Before going to bed you can take only a quarter see of milk, and nothing more than that. You cannot take food tomorrow as well, unless you are ordered to do so. You cannot take any breakfast tomorrow morning till the arrival of our Lord. A few drops of water, I can allow you, before going to the toilet. The situation is just the same as I told you while you were journeying in the private bus to Farrukhabad. A good deal of care is to be taken this night. I mean you will be given complete rest; and no talks to be there to cause irritation in you. Our Lord’s work is suffering. That means, the lives of certain persons are sure to be ended now. We do not want to see any hostile

elements among you. (Time 9.15 P.M.) Another destructive over! Time only upto 31<sup>st</sup> March 1945 I give a note to the persons who may write your biography, after you have gone from this world, to write the names of the persons who have helped in our cause.”

Revered Master (Time 10.39 P.M. at Farrukhabad): “I have transferred the power (to you), that was being referred to some time back. Have breakfast tomorrow morning, after I have arrived. Just now, I am going to Fatehgarh.”

(Farrukhabad, the district headquarters, where Revered Shri Babuji with his companions arrived by private bus from Shahjahanpur and camped for the night to attend the annual function the next day, is at a distance of about six kilometers from Fatehgarh.)

30-3-1945

Dictation from Sawmi Vivekananda Ji: “You must not be confused by any challenge. Intensive will has been bestowed on you. If somebody comes forward with a challenge, meet it at once and without delay. You will actually feel it (intensive will) after some time, when you arrive at the spot. The restriction regarding food to be taken by you) have been taken off, but with effect from a few hours from now. Leave this place (Farukhabad) for Fatehgarh after Reverend Lord Krishna: “All are waiting for you. My whole power will be there, as soon as you arrive at the spot.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Look here, Ram Chandra, you are at the highest pitch of your will-power now. If a challenge comes, we will reveal ourselves in you. Rest assured.”

Reverend Radha Ji: “I have received orders from Lord Krishna just now for total annihilation. Power is running. The vibration you are feeling all around at this time, is the power of destruction.”

Revered Master, addressing R2: “As soon as Ram Chandra felt me to be in dejection, he immediately started transmitting to me. This is the love; In reality I never have dejection. What a fine method of transmitting (to me) was adopted by him! He took himself to be

me; and transmitted (to himself). What a fine point of character! I am telling you one thing as a piece of advice: you do not, in general, initiate such acts, as issue forth from dear Ram Chandra, so long as you do not have identity with me established to a sufficient degree. Remember (carefully) that in case the matter happens to be the opposite or the thought commits a fault, this is the highest misdeed (in such actions, requiring the most severe punishment.)”

Revered Master, addressing R2: “How beautiful that when I cannot tolerate dear Ram Chandra’s suffering, and try to remove it in case a does arise per chance, it also becomes his very duty by way of (refinement of) character, that he too does not bear to see me in the state of dejection! That is the exact meaning of responsibility.”

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Our Lord is now in a fine state.”

Reveend Radha Ji: “The reply to the conversation at this time is that I shall pick up the arms in the very end; and if you (Ram Chandra) say so, I am ready (to pick up the arms) just now. I wait for (your) reply.”

I enquired of Swami Vivekananda Ji as to what reply I should give to Reverend Radha Ji.

Swami Vivekananda Ji: “Tell Her that it is not necessary at this time.”

31-3-1945

At 8.40 A.M. in accordance with Revered Master’s command, the declaration that Shri Ram Chandra of Shahajahanpur is the successor-representative of Revered Lalaji Saheb) was made in the general assembly of spiritual associates through R2.

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji (Time 5.00 P.M.): “There were a few persons assembled around R1, this noon, talking all about you.”

(Time 11.40 P.M.) “Another scheme ready! You are not allowed to go to the Satsang-Pandal (tent for the assembly) of spiritual associates) tomorrow. I shall let you



know (the reason) afterwards. There are proposals (for action against you.) Lord Krishna is protecting (you). One of your children (at Shahjahanpur) got fever. Your mother is doing well. I have relieved our lord of the duty. He remains with you every minute of day and night.”

The next morning Shri Babuji visited the sacred Samadhi, where the holy remains of Revered Lalaji Saheb and His son Shri Jagmohan Lal Ji were interned; and returned to Shahajahanpur.

*Editors Note:*

*The place is situated at a distance of about two kilometers from Fatehgarh. The urns containing the holy remains of Revered Lalaji Saheb’s wife and grandson Shri Akilesh Kumar are also interned there. “The ashes of Shri Krishna Swarup Ji of Jaipur (First cousin of Lalaji Saheb) were also interned in a small Samadi just behind the main larger one. Actual cremation o Shri Baldev Prasad Vaidya (B6) was performed just by the side of the interned ashes of Shri Krishna Swarup Ji (K1), and now a Samadhi is also built at that place. Revered Shri Babuji visited the place again sometime later, and remarked ruefully that people had turned Revered Lalaji Saheb’s holy Samadhi into a burial place and cremation ground.)*

*(With the declaration of Revered Shri Babuji as successor-representative of His Revered Master Lalaji Saheb, the second volume of part II of the autobiography of Shri Babuji comes to an end; and the third volume of this series, captioned ‘Third Volume – Contribution,’ shall follow hereafter, opening with the first entry on 1-4-1945. Editor.)*